Contents

Unit	
1. Basic English Sentence Structure	1
2. Sentences / Clauses / Phrases	3
3. Sentence Types	5
4. Infinitives / Gerunds/ Participles	14
5. Sentence Transformation	27
6. Tenses	30
7. Connectors / Conjunction	38
8. Parallel Structure	44
9. Wishes / Conditional Sentences	52
10. Subjunctive	56
11. Inversion of Verb and Adverb	60
12. Modal Verbs	72
13. Quantifiers	83
14. Agreement of Subjects and Verbs	96
15. "The Other" Group	104
16. An English Word with several meanings	108
17. Phrasal Verbs	117
More Exercises	119

โครงการสอนรายวิชาภาษาอังกฤษ 5 (อ 33101) ชั้นมัธยมศึกษาปีที่ 6 กลุ่มสาระการเรียนรู้ภาษาต่างประเทศ โรงเรียนสาธิตมหาวิทยาลัยราชภัฏสวนสุนันทา ภาคเรียนที่ 1 ปีการศึกษา 2562

ผู้สอน อาจารย์พรสิรินทร์ หาเรือนทรง

คำอธิบายรายวิชา

ศึกษา คำแนะนำในคู่มือการใช้งานต่าง ๆ คำชี้แจง คำขอร้อง คำอธิบายและคำบรรยาย ข้อความ บทความ ข่าว ประกาศ โฆษณา บทร้อยกรอง และบทละครสั้น (skit) การใช้พจนานุกรม หลักการอ่านออกเสียง สื่อที่ไม่ใช่ความเรียงแบบต่างๆ ข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับตนเองและเรื่องต่างๆ ใกล้ตัว ประสบการณ์ สถานการณ์ ข่าวและเหตุการณ์ ประเด็นที่อยู่ในความสนใจทั้งในท้องถิ่น สังคม และโลก ภาษาที่ใช้ในการแสดงความต้องการ ภาษาที่ใช้ในการตอบรับและปฏิเสธความช่วยเหลือในสถานการณ์ ต่าง ๆ

โดยใช้ทักษะการ ฟัง พูด อ่าน และเขียน อธิบาย เลือกและใช้ สรุปความ ตีความ วิเคราะห์ ความ ถ่ายโอนข้อมูล สนทนาแลกเปลี่ยนข้อมูล บอกความต้องการ แสดงความรู้สึกหรือความคิดเห็น ให้เหตุผลสั้นๆอธิบายหรืออภิปราย เปรียบเทียบ ค้นคว้าหรือสืบค้น สรุป บันทึก รวบรวม เผยแพร่และ ประชาสัมพันธ์

เพื่อให้เกิดความรู้ ความเข้าใจ ความคิด สามารถเลือกและระบุสิ่งต่าง ๆ เพื่อสื่อสารและ แลกเปลี่ยนเรียนรู้ นำไปตีความและถ่ายโอนข้อมูลได้ รู้จักใฝ่เรียนรู้จนเกิดเป็นวินัย ทำให้เกิดความมุ่งมั่น ในการเรียนและมีจิตสาธารณะ และสามารถนำสิ่งที่เรียนไปใช้เป็นเครื่องมือในการแสวงหาความรู้เพิ่มเติม เชื่อมโยงกับกลุ่มสาระการเรียนอื่นๆ และไปใช้ให้เกิดประโยชน์ในการประกอบอาชีพและศึกษาต่อ

ตัวชี้วัด

ิต 1.1 ม. 6/1, ม. 6/2, ม. 6/3, ม.6/4

ิต 1.2 ม. 6/1, ม. 6/2, ม. 6/3, ม. 6/4, ม. 6/5

ิต 1.3 ม. 6/1, ม. 6/3

จุดประสงค์รายวิชา

- 1. เพื่อให้รู้และเข้าใจโครงสร้างและหน้าที่ของกลุ่มคำและประโยคชนิดต่างๆของภาษาอังกฤษ
- 2. เพื่อให้สามารถเข้าใจและใช้ศัพท์สำนวนและโครงสร้างภาษาอังกฤษที่ถูกต้องเหมาะสมในการฟัง พูด อ่าน และเขียน
- 3. เพื่อให้สามารถใช้ความรู้ภาษาอังกฤษเป็นเครื่องมือในการสื่อสารและการหาความรู้เพิ่มเติม
- 4. เพื่อให้สามารถใช้ความรู้ภาษาอังกฤษในการศึกษาต่อ หรือเพื่อเป็นประโยชน์ในการประกอบ อาชีพ

สาระการเรียนรู้

- 1. Basic English Sentence Structure
- 2. Sentences / Clauses / Phrases
- 3. Sentence Types
- 4. Infinitives / Gerunds / Participles
- 5. Tenses
- 6. Connectors / Conjunction
- 7. Sentence Transformation
- 8. Parallel Structure
- 9. Wishes / Conditional Sentences

การวัดผลและประเมินผล

- คะแนนเก็บ 60 คะแนน
- สอบกลางภาค 20 คะแนน
- สอบปลายภาค 20 คะแนน

รวม 100 คะแนน

- การตัดเกรดใช้วิธีอิงเกณฑ์
- นักเรียนต้องเข้าเรียนอย่างย้อย 80 % ของเวลาเรียนทั้งหมด (ขาดเรียนได้ 4 ครั้ง = 8 คาบ)

โครงการสอน

กลุ่มสาระการเรียนรู้ ภาษาต่างประเทศ ชั้นมัธยมศึกษาปีที่ 6

วิชา ภาษาอังกฤษ 5 (อ 33101)

ภาคเรียนที่ 1 ปีการศึกษา 2562 จำนวน 1.0 หน่วยกิต

หน่วยการเรียนรู้	เรื่อง	คะแนน	
1.	Basic English Sentence Structure		
	Sentences / Clauses / Phrases	10	
	Sentence Types		
2.	Infinitives		
	Gerunds	10	
	Participles		
3.	Tenses	10	
สอบกลางภาคเรียนที่	1 - หน่วยที่ 1		
	- หน่วยที่ 2	20	
	- หน่วยที่ 3		
4.	Connectors	10	
5.	Sentence Transformation		
	Parallel Structure	10	
6.	Wishes / Conditional Sentences	10	
สอบปลายภาคเรียนที่ 1 - หน่วยที่ 4			
	- หน่วยที่ 5	20	
	- หน่วยที่ 6		
	รวม	100	

โครงการสอนรายวิชาภาษาอังกฤษ 6 (อ 33102) ชั้นมัธยมศึกษาปีที่ 6 กลุ่มสาระการเรียนรู้ภาษาต่างประเทศ โรงเรียนสาธิตมหาวิทยาลัยราชภัฏสวนสุนันทา ภาคเรียนที่ 2 ปีการศึกษา 2562

ผู้สอน อาจารย์พรสิรินทร์ หาเรือนทรง

คำอธิบายรายวิชา

ศึกษา เรื่องที่เป็นสารคดีและบันเทิงคดี การจับใจความสำคัญ การสรุปความ การตีความ การ วิเคราะห์ความ การใช้ภาษาในการแสดงความคิดเห็น แก่นสาระที่ได้จากการวิเคราะห์เรื่อง กิจกรรม ข่าว เหตุการณ์ และสถานการณ์ตามความสนใจ การเลือกใช้ภาษา น้ำเสียง และกิริยาท่าทางในการ สนทนากับระดับของบุคคล โอกาสและสาถนที่ วิถีชีวิต ความคิด ความเชื่อ และที่มาของขนบธรรมเนียม ประเพณีของเจ้าของภาษา การเข้าร่วมกิจกรรมทางภาษาและวัฒนธรรม ความแตกต่างระหว่าง โครงสร้างประโยค ข้อความ สำนวน คำพังเพย สุภาษิต และบทกลอนของภาษาต่างประเทศและ ภาษาไทย การค้นคว้าหรือสืบค้น การบันทึก การสรุป การแสดงความคิดเห็น และการนำเสนอข้อมูลที่ เกี่ยวกับกลุ่มสาระการเรียนรู้อื่น การใช้ภาษาสื่อสารในสถานการณ์จริงหรือจำลองเสมือนจริงที่เกิดขึ้นใน ห้องเรียน และชุมชน

โดยใช้ทักษะการฟัง พูด อ่าน และเขียน จับใจความสำคัญ วิเคราะห์ความ สรุปความ ตีความ และแสดงความคิดเห็น อธิบายและสนทนาแลกเปลี่ยนข้อมูล เลือกใช้ เข้าร่วม แนะนำและจัดกิจกรรม เปรียบเทียบ ค้นว้าหรือสืบค้น บันทึก นำเสนอข้อมูล เผยแพร่และประชาสัมพันธ์

เพื่อให้เกิดความรู้ ความเข้าใจ ความคิด สามารถสรุปความ วิเคราะห์ ตีความ และเปรียบเทียบ ความแตกต่าง ๆ เพื่อสื่อสารและแลกเปลี่ยนเรียนรู้ รู้จักใฝ่เรียนรู้จนเกิดเป็นวินัย ทำให้เกิดความมุ่งมั่นใน การเรียนและมีจิตสาธารณะ และสามารถนำสิ่งที่เรียนไปใช้เป็นเครื่องมือในการแสวงหาความรู้เพิ่มเติม เชื่อมโยงกับกลุ่มสาระการเรียนอื่นๆ และไปใช้ให้เกิดประโยชน์ในการประกอบอาชีพและศึกษาต่อ

ตัวชี้วัด

ต 1.1 ม. 6/4

ิต 1.3 ม. 6/2

ต.2.1 ม. 6/1, ม. 6/2, ม. 6/3

ต.2.2 ม. 6/1, ม. 6/2

ต 3.1 ม. 6/1

ิต 4.1 ม. 6/1

ิต 4.1 ม. 6/1, ม. 6/2

จุดประสงค์รายวิชา

- 1. เพื่อให้รู้และเข้าใจโครงสร้างและหน้าที่ของกลุ่มคำและประโยคชนิดต่างๆของภาษาอังกฤษ
- 2. เพื่อให้สามารถเข้าใจและใช้ศัพท์สำนวนและโครงสร้างภาษาอังกฤษที่ถูกต้องเหมาะสมในการ ฟัง พูด อ่าน และเขียน
- 3. เพื่อให้สามารถใช้ความรู้ภาษาอังกฤษเป็นเครื่องมือในการสื่อสารและการหาความรู้เพิ่มเติม
- 4. เพื่อให้สามารถใช้ความรู้ภาษาอังกฤษในการศึกษาต่อ หรือเพื่อเป็นประโยชน์ในการประกอบ อาชีพ

สาระการเรียนรู้

- 1. Subjunctive
- 2. Inversion of Verb and Adverb
- 3. Modal Verbs
- 4. Agreement of Subjects and Verbs
- 5. Quantifiers
- 6. The Other Group
- 7. An English word with several meanings
- 8. Phrasal Verbs

การวัดผลและประเมินผล

- คะแนนเก็บ 60 คะแนน
- สอบกลางภาค 20 คะแนน
- สอบปลายภาค 20 คะแนน

รวม 100 คะแนน

- การตัดเกรดใช้วิธีอิงเกณฑ์
- นักเรียนต้องเข้าเรียนอย่างย้อย 80 % ของเวลาเรียนทั้งหมด (ขาดเรียนได้ 4 ครั้ง = 8 คาบ)

โครงการสอน

กลุ่มสาระการเรียนรู้ ภาษาต่างประเทศ ชั้นมัธยมศึกษาปีที่ 6

วิชา ภาษาอังกฤษ 6 (อ 33102)

ภาคเรียนที่ 2 ปีการศึกษา 2562 จำนวน 1.0 หน่วยกิต

หน่วยการเรียนรู้	เรื่อง	คะแนน
1.	Subjunctive	10
2.	Inversion of Verb and Adverb	10
3.	Modal Verbs	10
สอบกลางภาคเรียง	มที่ 1 - หน่วยที่ 1 - หน่วยที่ 2 - หน่วยที่ 3	20
4.	Agreement of Subjects and Verbs	10
5.	Quantifiers "The Other" Group	10
6.	An English Word with several meanings Phrasal Verbs	10
สอบปลายภาคเรีย	นที่ 1 - หน่วยที่ 4 - หน่วยที่ 5 - หน่วยที่ 6	20
_	รวม	100

<u>โครงสร้างประโยคพื้นฐานในภาษาอังกฤษ</u>

โครงสร้างประโยคพื้นฐานในภาษาอังกฤษประกอบด้วย 2 ส่วน คือ Subject และ Predicate (ภาคประธานและภาคแสดง) โดย Subject อาจเป็นคำนาม คำสรรพนาม หรือกลุ่มคำนาม และ Predicate ประกอบด้วยคำกริยา กรรม หรือส่วนขยาย

รูปประโยคพื้นฐานในภาษาอังกฤษ (Basic Sentence Patterns) มีดังนี้

- 1. (D)N + be + Adj. / Adv.
 - Mr. Brown is handsome.
 - His Children are here.
- 2. (D)N + be + (D)N
 - His wife is a princess.
- 3. (D)N + V (+Adv.)
 - Soonthorn sings beautifully.
- 4. (D)N + V + (D)N
 - Pele Kicked the ball.
- 5. (D)N + V + (D)N + (D)N
 - Her mother gave me an advice.
- 6. (D)N + LV + (D)N
 - Wanchai became a poet.
- 7. (D)N + LV + Adj.
 - Bozo looks funny.
- 8. (D)N + V + (D)N + N
 - They selected Samak representative.
- 9. (D)N + V + (D)N + (D)N
 - We consider Somsak a genius.
- 10. (D)N + V + (D)N + Adj.
 - The students found the test very difficult.
- * D = Determiners :- a / an / the / this / that / my /
- * LV = Linking Verbs :- look / feel / seem / become /

Exercise

<u>DIRECTIONS</u>: <u>Tell that which basic sentence structure the following sentences are.</u>

1.	The hamburger seems delicious.
2.	He painted his house grey.
3.	My friend sent me a letter.
4.	Her dress is fashionable.
5.	My class chose Pisarn the leader.
6.	His father is a businessman.
7.	The winner ran quickly.
8.	The boy climbed the tree.
9.	My sister became an accountant.
10.	They appointed her director.
******	***************************************

SENTENCES / CLAUSES / PHRASES

Sentences (ประโยค)

Sentence เป็นกลุ่มคำที่มาประกอบกันให้มีเนื้อความสมบูรณ์ บอกการกระทำ ความเป็นอยู่ หรือ ความเป็นไปของสิ่งหนึ่งสิ่งใด โดยทั่วไปประโยคจะมี 2 ภาคคือ subject (ภาคประธาน) และ predicate (ภาคแสดง)

subject + predicate : He lives in Bangkok. (เขาอาศัยอยู่ที่กรุงเทพฯป None of the students knew the answer. (ไม่มีนักเรียนคนใดรู้คำตอบ)

Clauses (อนุประโยค)

Clause เป็นกลุ่มคำที่มี subject และ predicate เหมือนประโยค (sentence) แต่ไม่ได้อยู่ ตามลำพัง จะเชื่อมติดอยู่กับอีก clause หนึ่งเพื่อให้เป็น 1 ประโยคกล่าวคือ ในประโยคที่มี 2 ประโยค มารวมกันแต่ละ ประโยคคือ clause

Jack did not come to work because he had a bad cold.

clause ที่ 1 : Jack did not come to work แจ๊คไม่ได้มาทำงาน

clause ที่ 2 : because he had a bad cold. เพราะเขาเป็นไข้หวัดอย่างหนัก

Clauses สามารถแบ่งได้เป็น 2 ประเภทใหญ่ๆ ดังต่อไปนี้

- 1. Main Clause หรือ Independent Clause คือ ประโยคใจความหลัก มีความสมบูรณ์ใน ตัว ประกอบด้วยประธานและภาคแสดง (Subject and Predicate)
- 2. Subordinate Clause หรือ Dependent Clause อนุประโยคคือประโยคที่ไม่มีความ หมายสมบูรณ์ในตัวเอง โดยปกติจะใช้ประกอบ Main Clause เพื่อขยายหรืออธิบาย Main Clause ให้มีแต่ความสมบูรณ์ครบถ้วน ประโยค Subordinate Clause สังเกตง่ายๆ คือจะขึ้นต้นด้วยคำสันธาน Subordinating Conjunction ตัวอย่างเช่น because, if, when, unless, as soon as, until, while, whereas

ตัวอย่างประโยค

You will need a password if you subscribe to this online service.

(You will need a password - Main Clause,

if you subscribe to this online service - Subordinate Clause)

Phrases (วลี)

Phrase เป็นกลุ่มคำซึ่งเป็นส่วนหนึ่งประโยคที่ไม่มี subject หรือ predicate
In case of emergency, push the button. ในกรณีฉุกเฉินให้กดปุ่ม
(In case of emergency เป็นวลี)

Exercise

DIRECTIONS: Which of the following groups of words is it?

	1. a phrase	2. a dependent clause	3. a sentence
1.	On arriving in Krabi		
2.	Be ready by dawn		
3.	Walking in the morning	g every day	
4.	Tell me the truth		
5.	What an impression he	e made	
6.	Despite his sorrow		
7.	Before it started to rain	١	
8.	So long as he is alive		
9.	Since the sun rose		
10.	To do before sunset		
11.	Breathing heavily afte	r the race	
12.	When the bell rang		
13.	The lawyer who came	e first	
14.	To be able to stay he	ere	
15.	Everyone knows his n	ame	

SENTENCE TYPES

Sentence แบ่งออกเป็น 4 ชนิด คือ

1. <u>Simple Sentence</u> (เอกัตถประโยค) หมายถึง<u>ประโยคที่มีกริยาแท้หรือกริยาสำคัญ</u> <u>เพียงตัวเดียว</u> (คือจะมีประธานกับกริยา) ส่วนอย่างอื่นจะมีมากหรือน้อยอย่างไรก็ได้ เช่น

That girl cooks her breakfast by herself. เด็กหญิงคนนั้นทำอาหารเช้าของเธอด้วยตัวเธอเอง

Simple Sentence แบ่งเป็นประโยคย่อยได้ 5 รูป คือ บอกเล่า, ปฏิเสธ, คำถาม, ขอร้องหรือคำสั่ง และอุทาน

2. <u>Compound Sentence</u> (อเนกัตถประโยค) หมายถึง<u>ประโยคใหญ่ที่ประกอบขึ้นด้วย</u> <u>ประโยค เล็กของ Simple Sentence ตั้งแต่ 2 ประโยคขึ้นไป</u> โดยอาศัย Conjunction (and, or, so, but) เป็น ตัวเชื่อม เช่น

(Simple Sentence) = He open the door. เขาเปิดประตู

(Simple Sentence) = He walked into the room. เขาเดินเข้าไปในห้อง

(Compound Sentence) = He open the door and walked into the room.

เขาเปิดประตูและเดินเข้าไปในห้อง

and : and....too / and...also / and...as well / both...and / and also / as well as /

not only...but also

but: while / whereas / yet / still / ;however, / ;nevertheless, / ;on the other hand,

or : or else / otherwise / either...or / neither...nor

so : for / therefore / ;consequently, / ;accordingly, / thus / hence

3. <u>Complex Sentence</u> (สังกรประโยค) หมายถึง<u>ประโยคใหญ่ที่ประกอบด้วยประโยค</u> เ<u>ล็ก 2 ประโยค</u> โดย 2 ประโยคนี้มีความสำคัญไม่เท่ากัน นั่นคือ<u>ประโยคหลัก Main Clause</u> (มุขยประโยค) ที่มีใจความสมบูรณ์ และ <u>ประโยครอง Subordinate Clause(อนุประโยค) ที่ต้อง</u> อาศัยประโยค Main Clause จึงจะได้ใจความสมบูรณ์ เช่น

Complex Sentence = This is the house that I bought last year.

นี่คือบ้านที่ผมซื้อไว้เมื่อปีที่แล้ว

Main Clause = This is the house.

Subordinate Clause = that I bought last year.

4. <u>Compound Complex Sentence</u> (อเนกัตถะสังกรประโยค) หมายถึงประโยคใหญ่ ตั้งแต่ 2 ประโยคขึ้นไปมารวมกันอยู่ โดยอีกประโยคใหญ่ท่อนหนึ่งนั้นจะมีประโยคเล็กแทรกซ้อนอยู่ภาย เช่น

Compound Complex Sentence = I couldn't remember what his name is, but I ask him. = ฉันจำไม่ได้ว่าเขาชื่ออะไร แต่ฉันจะถามเขา

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES (DEPENDENT CLAUSES)

Subordinate Clauses (Dependent Clauses = อนุประโยค) คือ<u>ประโยคที่ไม่มีเนื้อความ</u> สมบูรณ์ในตัวเอง จะต้องไปอาศัยประโยคหลักหรือประโยคใหญ่เสียก่อน แล้วเนื้อความของมันจึงจะฟัง เข้าใจ

แบ่งออกเป็น 3 ชนิดคือ

- 1. Noun Clauses (นามานุประโยค)
- 2. Adjective Clauses (คุณานุประโยค)
- 3. Adverb Clauses (วิเศษณานุประโยค)
- 1. Noun Clauses คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่เหมือนคำนามในประโยค แต่มีใจความไม่สมบูรณ์ในตัวเอง ต้องอาศัยใจความจากประโยคหลัก Noun Clauses จะขึ้นต้นด้วยคำแสดงคำถาม เช่น how, what, which, where, why, who, whom, whose และมักจะ ขึ้นต้นประโยคด้วย that ซึ่งแปลว่า "ว่า" เช่น

The bulletin states that English courses require a laboratory period.

The teacher explained how the sentences are formed.

หน้าที่ของ Noun Clauses

1. เป็นประธานของกริยา

What he did is really strange.

Your word is not important.

2. เป็นกรรมของกริยา

Tom wants to know where the student cafeteria is.

I have forgotten what the teacher told me.

3. เป็นกรรมของบุพบท

We only laughed at what she said.

She is ignorant of what her son did.

4. เป็นส่วนสมบูรณ์ของประโยค

This is how I made my cake.

The fact is that she is poor.

5. เป็นคำซ้อนของนามหรือสรรพนาม

The news that he will intend to come isn't true.

It is unfortunate that you don't get the scholarship.

- 2. Adjective Clauses คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่เป็นคุณศัพท์ คือ ขยายคำนามหรือ สรรพนาม ลักษณะของ Adjective Clauses จะนำหน้าด้วยคำเชื่อม (Connectives) 2 ชนิด คือ
 - 2.1 Relative Pronouns: who, whom, that, which, whose
 - 2.2 Relative Adverbs : when, where, why

The man who sits next to me never spoke to me.

The book which is written in German is difficult and boring.

Teachers whose classes are interesting have many students.

This is the school where I used to work.

3. Adverb Clauses คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่เหมือน adverb ขยายกริยา ขยายคุณศัพท์ และขยาย กริยาวิเศษณ์ที่อยู่ในประโยคอื่นได้

She went home <u>because she had a fever</u>. He treats us as if we were his children.

Adverb Clauses มี 9 ชนิด คือ

3.1 Adverb Clause of Time คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยาเพื่อแสดงเวลา เช่น when, whenever, while, before, after, as soon as, since, until

As it was late, we went home.

I will wait here <u>until</u> you allow me to come in.

3.2 Adverb Clause of Place คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยาเพื่อบอกสถานที่ เช่น where, wherever

You may go wherever you want.

She hid her money where nobody could find it.

3.3 Adverb Clause of Manner คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยาเพื่อแสดงอาการ เช่น as, as if, as though

He acted <u>as if</u> he were a millionaire.

She wrote the letter <u>as</u> she was told.

3.4 Adverb Clause of Comparison คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยาวิเศษณ์ หรือขยายคุณศัพท์ เพื่อแสดงการเปรียบเทียบ เช่น as.....as, so......as, than,

Can you send me your application form <u>as soon as possible</u>?

Laura didn't do <u>so</u> well in the exam <u>as</u> she had hoped.

3.5 Adverb Clause of Cause or Reason คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยา หรือคุณศัพท์เพื่อ แสดงสาเหตุหรือแสดงเหตุผล เช่น because, since, as,

They moved to London because they wanted to stay with their parents.

3.6 Adverb Clause of Purpose คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยาเพื่อแสดงความมุ่งหมายหรือ แสดงวัตถุประสงค์ เช่น so that, in order that,

She works hard <u>so that</u> she can get more money for her children.

He came here <u>in order that</u> he might see his boss.

3.7 Adverb Clause of Result คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยา ขยายคุณศัพท์ หรือขยายคำ วิเศษณ์ เช่น so......that, such......that,

New cars are <u>so</u> expensive <u>that</u> some employees buy used ones.

She is <u>such</u> a polite girl <u>that</u> everybody likes her.

3.8 Adverb Clause of Condition คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยาเพื่อแสดงเงื่อนไข เช่น if, unless, provided that, on condition that,

<u>If</u> she comes, I will tell her the truth.

<u>Unless</u> he works harder, he will fail.

3.9 Adverb Clause of Concession คือ ประโยคที่ทำหน้าที่ขยายกริยา หรือ ขยายคุณศัพท์เพื่อ แสดงการขัดแย้ง เช่น though, although, however, whatever,

Although she is fat, she can run quickly.

Whatever help you give them, they will never thank you.

PHRASES

Phrases (วลี) คือ กลุ่มคำซึ่งรวมกันตั้งแต่ 2 คำขึ้นไป มีความหมายในตัวเองบ้าง แต่ไม่ได้ ใจความสมบูรณ์ วลีแบ่งเป็นประเภทใหญ่ๆ ได้ 3 ประเภท คือ

- 1. Noun phrase แบ่งเป็น
 - 1.1 infinitive phrase
 - 1.2 gerundial phrase
- 2. Adjective phrase แบ่งเป็น
 - 2.1 infinitive phrase
 - 2.2 participle phrase
 - 2.3 prepositional phrase
 - 2.4 appositive phrase
- 3 Adverb phrase แบ่งเป็น
 - 3.1 infinitive phrase
 - 3.2 participle phrase
 - 3.3 absolute phrase
 - 3.4 prepositional phrase

1. Noun Phrase

1.1 infinitive phrase

- 1. ทำหน้าที่เป็นประธานของประโยค (Subjective)
 - To learn English is good.
- 2. ทำหน้าที่เป็นกรรมของประโยค (Objective)
 - I want to learn English.
- 3. ทำหน้าที่เป็นส่วนสมบูรณ์ของประโยค (Complement)
 - My aim is to learn English.

1.2 gerundial phrase

- 1. ทำหน้าที่เป็นประธานของประโยค (Subjective)
 - Learning English is good.
- 2. ทำหน้าที่เป็นกรรมของประโยค (Objective)
 - Lenjoy learning English.
- 3. ทำหน้าที่เป็นส่วนสมบูรณ์ของประโยค (Complement)
 - My aim is learning English.
 - Everything depends on learning English.
- 2. <u>Adjective phrase</u> จะทำหน้าที่ขยาย Noun, Noun Equivalent, Pronoun วางไว้หลังตัวที่มันขยาย เสมอ

2.1 infinitive phrase

- This is the way to learn English.
- I have nothing to eat today.

2.2 participle phrase

- The bird singing in the tree is very beautiful.
- The bird shot down by the boy is very beautiful.
- 2.3 prepositional phrase ทำหน้าที่เชื่อม Noun, Noun Equivalent
 - The book **on the table** is mine.
- 2.4 appositive phrase (a group of noun = noun + noun) อยู่หลัง Noun ที่มัน ขยายและต้องมี Comma เสมอ
 - Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, is very beautiful.
 - Napoleon, the French Emperor, fought very bravely.

3. Adverb phrase

- 3.1 infinitive phrase เป็น adverb of purpose เสมอ
 - She is glad to learn English. (ขยาย adjective)
 - She runs fast to learn English. (ขยาย adverb)

Remark : โดยตำแหน่งปกติแล้วจะอยู่หลังตัวที่มันขยาย ยกเว้น กรณีต้องการเน้นประโยค
- To learn English, I have to practice hard.

- 3.2 participle phrase แบ่งเป็น present participial (ประธานเป็นผู้กระทำกริยา นั้นเอง) คือ Verb เติม -ing และ past participial (ประธานถูกกระทำ) Verb ช่อง 3 สำหรับ งานเขียน (written English) ที่ต้องการเน้นประโยค จะวาง participial phrase ไว้หน้าประโยคโดยมี comma คั่น
 - Singing in the tree, the bird was shot down by the boy. (present participial phrase)
 - Shot down by the boy, the bird lay dead under the tree. (past participial phrase)
 - 3.3 absolute phrase เป็นวลีที่สมบูรณ์เหมือนประโยค (ประธาน + participial phrase)
 - John passing his exam, his father rewarded him.
 - 3.4 prepositional phrase
 - Don't go without your raincoat.
 - The girl ate her soup with a small spoon.
 - During the Summer, some of my friend went to Hua Hin.

Exercises

A. Say what kind of sentence it is:	1. Simple Sentence
	2. Compound Sentence
	3. Complex Sentence
	4. Compound-Complex Sentence
1. Small things become strong by be	eing united among themselves.
Answer	
2. Wise men love truth, whereas foo	ls shun it.
Answer	
3. The man who came here this mor	rning is my uncle.
Answer	
4. Please tell me which book you wa	ant in this shop.
Answer	
5. He lost the radio which he borrow	ved from me, so he couldn't face with me again.
Answer	
6. Not only I but all other men decla	are this to be true.
Answer	
7. The sun rising, we continued our j	ourney.
Answer	
8. The men arrived at the camp at s	unset, exhausted and depressed.
Answer	
9. Having finished their work, they al	l went back home by bus.
Answer	
10. I don't know anyone in this office	, so I can't go in.
Answer	
11. Seeing the enemies, he told his m	nen to lie down and be ready to fight.
Answer	
12. You must give up drinking, or else	e I will help you no more.
Answer	

13. What the hottest month it is!	
Answer	
14. When I was four I said I was going on the stage.	
Answer	
15. Although I like to go camping, I haven't had the time to go	lately, and I haven't
found anyone to go with.	
Answer	
B. Underline the dependent clauses and say what kind it is	s. (Noun Clause,
Adjective Clause or Adverb Clause)	
1. Where the President lives is still a mystery.	
2. I know why that lady was angry.	
3. Bob felt sick when he knew his English grade.	
4. The policeman hoped they could help the hostage in time.	
5. The Chinese vase which was broken belonged to my grandmo	ther
6. As soon as the bell rings three times, the students rush out of	the classroom.
7. Amy succeeded because she worked hard.	
8. I don't know where the Ramkhamhaeng library is.	
9. He wanted to know the girl who owned the flower shop.	
10. She cried as if she were really sad.	
11. Mary thinks of how she can get more money from stock mark	ket
12. I remember the day when you first came to our office.	
13. Jack is the only one who knows the correct answer.	
14. Even though the weather was cold, we went swimming.	
15. I'll be at my office in case you need some help.	
16. She didn't know which book she was suppose to buy.	
17. Who sent these presents is a mystery to her?	
18. Ted failed the exam, even if he studied hand.	
19. A person whose blood pressure is high may have heart disea	se
20. As soon as my uncle finds the car key, we'll leave.	

C. Underline the phrase and say what kind it is. 1. Jogging every day is necessary for him. 2. I saw the teenagers dancing in that discotheque. 3. The lady crossing the street is my English teacher. 4. We bought the house with 5 bedrooms. 5. Written in a great hurry, the letters were posted. 6. The house near the Central Park is his. 7. The boys beaten by their mother are very naughty. 8. Her hair needs to be washed every day. 9. We have nothing to give him now. 10. Being very hungry, Joe ordered 2 hamburgers and big coke. D. Which is a sentence? 1. The delicious chocolate cake. 2. The big boy in the supermarket. 3. Some boys play in the Game. 4. Because of heavy rain. 5. Those frozen food. 6. The racing car. 7. John cried loudly. 8. The ancient Chinese bowl. 9. Chap your hands. 10. To go shopping in the morning.

INFINITIVES / GERUNDS / PARTICIPLES

- 1. Infinitives มี 2 ประเภทคือ
 - Infinitive with to
 - Infinitive without to
- 1.1. Infinitive with to คือ กริยารูปธรรมดาที่นำหน้าด้วย to (to + infinitive) Infinitive with to มีการใช้ดังนี้
 - 1.1 เป็นประธานของประโยค เช่น
 - To tell the truth is sometimes difficult.
 - To love is to risk.
 - 1.2 เป็นกรรมของประโยค เช่น
 - She loves to cook.
- 1.3 เป็นส่วนเติมเต็มของประโยคหรือ complement ซึ่งมักจะตามหลัง Verb to be เช่น
 - The purpose of this valve is to control the flow.
 - My plan is to finish this project by January.

หน้าที่ทั้งหมดที่กล่าวไว้ด้านบนจะเห็นว่าคือหน้าที่ของคำนาม ฉะนั้น infinitive with to จึงทำหน้าที่เสมือนคำนามเหมือนกับ Gerund

การใช้ Infinitive with to ในลักษณะอื่น เช่น

- 1. ตามหลังคำกริยาต่อไปนี้ attempt (พยายาม), agree(เห็นด้วย), decide (ตัดสินใจ), forget (ลืม), hope (หวังว่า), intend (ตั้งใจ), plan (วางแผน), promise (สัญญา), pretend (แสร้งทำ), begin (เริ่ม), continue (ทำต่อไป), etc เช่น
 - We intend to move to Bangkok soon.
 - After New Year, I plan to work harder.
 - She agrees to come with us.
 - ** คำกริยาบางคำสามารถมีกรรมตามหลังก่อนได้แล้วค่อยตามด้วย infinitive with to เช่น
 - The travel agency allowed us to change our booking.
 - Who taught the girl to dance?
 - I warned him not to call me again.
 - 2. เป็นคำขยายคำนาม หรือ คำคุณศัพท์ ซึ่งมักจะวางตามหลังนามหรือคุณศัพท์นั้นๆ เช่น
 - ขยายนาม We've got a problem to discuss.
 - This is a pill to help you sleep.
 - ขยายคุณศัพท์ I'm so glad to see you.
 - Are you ready to begin?

- 3. ตามหลัง Wh -Question เพื่อแสดงการสอบถาม การแนะนำหรือรับทราบ เช่น
 - I don't know what to do.
 - Can you tell me how to get to the station?
- 1.2. Infinitive without to คือ กริยารูปธรรมดาที่ไม่มี to นำหน้า ซึ่งจะอยู่ตามหลัง modal verbs (กริยาช่วย) เช่น can, could, will, would, may, might, shall, should, must, need, dare
 - She may forget to call you.
 - You should stop smoking.

และบางครั้งก็วางไว้หลังวลีเหล่านี้ เช่น had better, would rather, had rather, would sooner, had sooner, cannot but เช่น

- You had better sleep early tonight. และตามหลังกริยาที่แสดงการรับรู้หรือกริยาต่อไปนี้ เช่น see, feel, hear, smell, watch, let, make, help, notice, observe, etc.

- I saw him walk across the road.
- You make me understand the lesson.
- She lets me go home early.
- 2. Gerunds คือ กริยาเติม ing มีการใช้ดังนี้
 - 1.1 เป็นประธานของประโยค เช่น
 - Telling the truth is sometimes difficult.
 - Loving is to risk.
 - 1.2 เป็นกรรมของประโยค เช่น
 - She likes cooking.
 - 1.3 เป็นส่วนเติมเต็มของประโยคหรือ complement ซึ่งมักจะตามหลัง Verb to be เช่น
 - The purpose of this valve is to control the flow.
 - My duty is cleaning my room.

การใช้ Gerunds ในลักษณะอื่น

1. ตามหลังกริยาต่อไปนี้

enjoy ชอบ, สนุกสนาน finish เสร็จ, ทำเสร็จ avoid หลีกเลี่ยง postpone เลื่อนออกไป mind รังเกียจ look forward to ตั้งหน้าตั้งตาคอย

be worth มีคุณค่า

- I enjoy listening to music.
- Have you **finished doing** your homework?
- He tried to avoid answering my question.

- I have **postponed writing** a letter so many times. I really must do it today.
 - Would you **mind closing** the door?
 - I look forward to getting your letter.
 - This book is worth reading.

*** กริยาที่ตามได้ทั้ง กริยาเติม ing และ infinitive with to

กริยาที่ตามได้ทั้ง กริยาเติม ing และ infinitive with to แต่มีความหมายแตกต่างกัน ที่ควรจำมี 3 ตัว คือ

stop, remember, forget

stop + ing มีความหมายว่า หยุดทำสิ่งนั้น stop + to inf. มีความหมายว่า หยุดเพื่อทำสิ่งนั้น

- When the teacher came, everyone stopped talking.
- What are you doing? Can you **stop to help** me first?

remember + ing มีความหมายว่า จำถึงสิ่งที่ได้ทำไปแล้ว remember + to inf. มีความหมายว่า จำได้ถึงสิ่งที่ต้องทำ

- I'm sure I locked the door. I clearly **remembered locking** it.
- I remembered to lock the door when I left.

forget + ing มีความหมายว่า ลืมถึงสิ่งที่ได้ทำไปแล้ว

forget + to inf. มีความหมายว่า ลืมสิ่งที่ต้องทำ

- I'm sorry I forgot borrowing you some money.
- Don't **forget to post** the letter for me.

*need + ing = need to be + past participle (V.3)

ทั้ง 2 รูป มีความหมายเหมือนกันคือ ต้อง/จำเป็นต้องได้รับการ..........

- The roof **needs fixing**. = The roof **needs to be fixed**.
- 3. Participles เป็นรปที่ไม่ใช่กริยาแท้ (non-finite verbs) มี 3 ชนิด
 - I. <u>Present Participle</u> ได้แก่ Verb + ing ทำหน้าที่ดังนี้
 - 1. ตามหลัง Verb to be ทำให้ประโยคนั้นเป็น Continuous Tense เช่น
 - He is **sleeping** under the tree.
 - I have been working here for two hours.
- 2. ตามหลังกริยาที่แสดงความรู้สึก ได้แก่ see, feel, hear, smell, watch, notice, observe เมื่อหมายถึง "การกระทำนั้น กำลังดำเนินอยู่" เช่น
 - The teacher watched us playing football.
 - I saw her coming here.

- 3. ใช้เป็น Adjective หรือส่วนประกอบของ Compound Adjective ประกอบ หน้าคำนาม เช่น
 - A crying boy is afraid of a standing dog.
 - That well-**singing** girl is my little sister.
- 4. ใช้ขยายกรรมของกริยาต่อไปนี้ find, keep, leave, catch, set, get, send, discover, bring, draw, imagine, paint, show และ take

มีโครงสร้าง คือ Subject + Verb + Object + Present Participle

- My friend kept me waiting the whole day.
- He left me **standing** at the hall.
- 5. ใช้ตามหลัง Verb to have ที่ไปแสดงผล หรือประสบการณ์ และใช้กับ can't หรือ won't ก็ได้ มีความหมายว่า "อนุญาต" เช่น
 - The doctor will soon have him **going** home.
 - The government can't have you **doing** that.
- 6. ใช้ทำหน้าที่ขยายคำนามที่อยู่ข้างหน้า หมายถึง นามนั้นเป็นผู้กระทำกริยา เป็นการลด ประโยค Complex Sentence ที่มีประโยครองเป็น Adjective Clause โดยลดกริยาของประโยครอง ให้เป็น Present Participle
 - The man who wrote that book won the prize.
 - = The man writing that book won the prize.
 - 7. ใช้ขยายกริยาตัวอื่นในลักษณะที่การกระทำนั้นกระทำพร้อมกันในเวลาเดียวกัน เช่น
 - She stood waiting for you.
 - They entered carrying the posters.
- 8. ใช้รวมประโยค Simple Sentence 2 ประโยคให้เป็น Simple Sentence ประโยคเดียว มี 2 ลักษณะ
 - 1. ประธานของทั้ง 2 ประโยคเป็นตัวเดียวกัน
 - 2. ประธานของทั้ง 2 ประโยคไม่ใช่ตัวเดียวกัน

การรวมประโยคที่มีประธานตัวเดียวกัน มีหลักดังนี้

- 1. ตัดประธานเสียตัวหนึ่ง แต่ถ้าประธานเป็น noun ตัวหนึ่ง และ pronoun ตัวหนึ่ง ตัดตัวที่เป็น pronoun ทิ้ง
- 2. ดูกริยาสำคัญของทั้ง 2 ประโยคว่า กริยาตัวใดเกิดก่อน ทำกริยาตัวนั้นให้เป็น Present Participle (กริยาที่ทำเป็น V.-ing และใช้นำหน้าคำอื่น เรียกว่า Participial Phrase)

He saw a tiger. He ran away.

= Seeing a tiger, he ran away.

I stood on the road. I saw a car accident.

= Standing on the road, I saw a car accident.

การรวมประโยคที่ไม่ใช่ประธานตัวเดียวกัน

- 1. ประธานของทั้ง 2 ประโยคไม่ตัดทิ้ง
- 2. เปลี่ยนกริยาที่เกิดก่อนหรือที่เป็นเหตุนั้นเป็น Present Participle (Present Participle ในที่นี้จึงถูกนำมาใช้อย่างอิสระ(absolute) คือ ใช้ คล้ายกับเป็นกริยาของประธาน แต่ ก็ไม่ใช่ เราเรียก phrase นี้ว่า absolute phrase)

His mother was absent. He looked after the house.

= His mother being absent, he looked after the house.

The cinema was full. We went home.

- = The cinema being full, we went home.
- II. Past Participle ได้แก่ กริยาช่องที่ 3 ทำหน้าที่
 - 1. ตามหลัง Verb to have ทำให้ประโยคนั้นเป็น Perfect Tense เช่น
 - We have **lived** here for five years.
 - 2. ตามหลัง Verb to be ทำให้ประโยคนั้นเป็น Passive Voice เช่น
 - he was **punished** by the teacher.
- 3. ใช้เป็น Adjective หรือ ส่วนประกอบของ Compound Adjective ประกอบ หน้าคำนาม เช่น
 - The **used** car is not dear.
 - She doesn't like a badly-**built** house.
- 4. ใช้ขยายนามที่อยู่ข้างหน้า หมายถึง นามนั้นไม่ได้เป็นผู้กระทำกริยาแต่ถูกกระทำ เช่น
 - The songs **composed by James** are popular.

(มาจาก The songs that were composed by James are popular.)

- 5. ใช้รวมประโยค Simple Sentence 2 ประโยคให้เป็น Simple Sentence ประโยคเดียว (มีหลักการรวมประโยคเหมือนข้อ 8 ใน Present Participle) เช่น
 - He was punished by his teacher. He came to school early.
 - = Punished by the teacher, he came to school early.
- III. Perfect Participle ได้แก่ Having+กริยาช่องที่ 3 มีการใช้ คือ ใช้เมื่อการกระทำ 2 อย่าง เกิดขึ้นไม่พร้อมกัน โดยที่การกระทำอันที่หนึ่งเกิดขึ้นก่อน และก็จบลงไปแล้ว จึงได้มีการ กระทำอันที่สองเกิดขึ้นตามหลังการกระทำที่เกิดก่อนใช้ Perfect Participle ส่วนการกระทำที่ทำ ตามหลังยังคงไว้ตามเดิม เช่น
 - She arrived in India. She went to see the Taj Mahal.
 - = **Having arrived in India**, she went to see the Taj Mahal.
 - They have finished their homework. They go for a swim.
 - = Having finished their homework, they go for a swim.

- The sun rose. The fog disappeared.
- = The sun having risen, the fog disappeared.

NOTE 1. เราสามารถวาง Conjunction กำกับหน้า Participle ได้ เช่น

- While waiting for the bus, he met an old friend.
- After having studied the question, he started to write.
- 2. ถ้ากริยาในส่วนที่จะย่อ(หลัง Conjunction) เป็น be ก็ให้ตัดทิ้งได้ เช่น
 - When you are in Rome, do as the Romans do.
 - When in Rome, do as the Romans do.
 - If they are hungry, they go to the kitchen.
 - If hungry, they go to the kitchen.
- 3. after, before, since เป็น preposition ด้วย ใช้กับ V-ing ได้อยู่แล้ว
 - He has earned his own living since leaving school.
- 4. as soon as+ประโยค อาจใช้ on + V-ing ได้
 - As soon as the dog saw the cat, it ran after it.
 - On seeing the cat, the dog ran after it.

Sentence Transformation

- 1. a. Driving fast is dangerous.
 - b. It is dangerous to drive fast.
- 2. a. I prefer driving to flying.
 - b. I prefer to drive rather (than) fly.
- 3 a. They made him admit his guilt.
 - b. He was made to admit his guilt.
- 4 a. They let him enter the building.
 - b. They allowed him to enter the building.
- 5 a. She was too inexperienced to get the job.
 - b. She wasn't experienced enough to get the job.
- 6 a. We were interested in the lecture.
 - b. The lecture was interesting to us.

- 7 a. Could you clean up the room?
 - b. Do/Would you mind cleaning up the room?
 - c. Would you be so kind as to clean up the room?
- 8 a. It was difficult for him to do the crossword.
 - b. He had difficulty (in) doing the crossword.
 - c. He found it difficult to do the crossword.
 - d. He could hardly do the crossword.
- 9 a. It took her an hour to prepare the meal.
 - b. She took an hour to prepare the meal.
 - c. Preparing the meal took her an hour.
 - d. She spent an hour preparing the meal.

Exercises

(B)

DIRECTIONS: Find out the bare infinitive (B), the infinitive (I), the gerund (G), the present participle (Pr.p), or the past participle (P.p.) in each sentence. Underline and identify them.

My mother let me <u>go</u> to the party.

e.g.

1.	Penny wants to learn Japanese.	()
2.	Do you enjoy going to the beach in the summer?	()
3.	The doctor is saving the injured baby.	()
4.	My aunt went shopping with me yesterday.	()
5.	I am really frightened by you!	()
6.	Would you go with me?	()
7.	The talk was boring.	()
8.	You should listen to me!	()
9.	He is too young to understand the situation.	()
10.	The finished product is a piece of artwork!	()
DIF	RECTIONS: Choose the correct option in each sentence.		
e.g	. My boss expects me <u>to work</u> overtime. (work, to work, working, work	ked)	
1.	1. I must more to keep fit. (exercise, to exercise, exercising,		
	exercised)		
2.	I remember Sue last Sunday. (visit, to visit, visiti	ng, v	isited)
3.	The salesman seemed impatient. (get, to get, ge	ettin	g, got)
4.	I really miss in the countryside. (live, to live, living	g, li∨∈	ed)
5.	She was by the exhibition. (fascinate, to fascinate,	fasc	inating,
	fascinated)		
6.	If you don't stop, you'll kill yourself. (diet, to	diet,	dieting,
	dietec	l)	
7.	The boy a red T-shirt is my neighbor. (wear, to	wear	, wearing,
	worn)		
8.	The cup with orange juice is yours. (fill, to fill, fi	lling,	filled)

9.	She is incapable of good decisions. (make, to make, making,
	made)
10.	I can't wait her again. (see, to see, seeing, seen)
DIF	RECTIONS : Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verbs given.
	e.g. I was afraid of <u>hurting</u> his feelings. (hurt)
1.	After dinner, she continued her homework until late at night. (do)
2.	Tom stopped up his washing on the way home. (pick)
3.	Tell me your plan. I'm interested about it. (hear)
4.	The drama has won several awards. (amaze)
5.	Most of Hong Kong people don't like meat. (freeze)
6.	I think you should give up because you have a very poor voice. (sing
7.	He isn't strong enough in the basketball team. (be)
8.	is good exercise. (walk)
9.	It is getting dark. We had better now. (go)
10.	It is very cold. I would rather at home. (stay)
DIF	RECTIONS: There is one mistake in each sentence. Underline the mistakes
	and correct them.
	('X': extra word; '^': missing word;: wrong word)
e.g	
	The girl is (^ too) young to look after herself. (^)
1.	The girl is too young <u>looking (to look)</u> after herself. () I dislike to argue. ()
1.	ruistike to argue. ()
2.	You ought finish the project now. (^)
3.	I suggested to take a walk in the garden. ()

4.	The teacher made Rose to do homework again. (X)
5.	Paul did not object to join the party. ()
6.	The broken chair needs be repaired. (^)
7.	It is no use to asking Mike for help. He is selfish. (X)
8.	You are not old enough join the club. (^)
9.	They didn't see her to come in. (X)
10.	Depressing after losing all his money in gambling, George decided to start a new life. ()
DIR	ECTIONS : Rewrite the following sentences using the words given, without
e.g.	changing the meaning. We were shocked by the news. (shocking) The news was shocking to us.
1.	Dad didn't allow Jimmy to drive his car. (let)
2.	Would you be so kind as to move over a little? (mind)
3.	We found the horror film terrifying. (terrified)
4.	It was difficult for her to cope with city life. (difficulty)
5.	He wasn't tall enough to be a policeman. (short)

6.	Mom advised us to catch the early train. (suggested)
7.	We should not make friends with triad members. (avoid)
8.	It is my pleasure to meet you. (meeting)
9.	They ordered him to clean the bathroom. (made)
10.	It took me several days to do the task. (spent)
DIF	RECTIONS: In the following sentences supply the correct form of the participle.
1.	(stare) at him severely, he refused to answer.
2.	(conclude) her summation of the evidence, the defense attorney rested her client's case.
3.	(tell) he was no longer needed, he decided to ask for a transfer.
4.	(find) the door closed behind him, he looks about for an emergency exit.
5.	(leave) the Army with an honorable discharge, he was surprised that it took him three months to find work.
6.	(receive) the honorary degree, the distinguished physician soon left for the airport.
7.	(offer) the house for \$ 5,000 less than its market value, he hoped to sell it quickly.
8.	Customers (arrive) after six o'clock will find the store closed.

9.	The auditors will be concerned with entries (omit) from the books.	
10.	. She will find her new position (challenge).	
11.	. Have you seen the (wound) soldiers?	
12.	. While (speak) on the soap-box, I was interrupted.	
13.	. I found a book carefully (place) in the desk.	
14.	. The (tire) farmer was wearing a (tear) coat.	
15.	. Though (alarm) at the news, he did not lose all hope.	
16.	. After (defeat), the team began to practice much harder than before.	
17.	. (order) to go, he went immediately.	
18.	s. (laugh) at by everybody, Malee started to cry.	
19.	Critics (review) for the newspapers attended the Gala Premier of the po	erformance
20.	. Houses (locate) in town are in great demand.	
DIR	RECTIONS ; Correct the following sentences.	
	1. Going at full speed, he was hit by a car.	
	2. Getting to school very late, the teacher punished the boy.	

3.	Having finished my work, the teacher permitted me to go home.
4.	Felt very hungry, he bought food to eat.
5.	Was fined ten baht, he deplored it.

Exercises

Sentence Transformation

DIRECTIONS : Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1.	He is better at football than any other sport.
	Football is his sport.
2.	Juice is better for you than coke.
	Coke isn't for you as juice.
3.	Magazines can be bought in this shop.
	you magazines in this shop.
4.	Maria plays the guitar really well.
	Maria is really playing the guitar.
5.	There are only a few houses in this village.
	There aren't very houses in this village.
6.	Maria is very unpopular.
	Not many people Maria.
7.	They asked me if I was happy.
	" you happy?"
8.	Why don't you do your homework?
	If I were you, I do my homework.
9.	The bus station is near the new shopping center.
	The bus station isn't the new shopping center.
10	. I was taught English by a very good teacher.
	The teacher who me English was very good.
11	. Is notebook is yours?
	Does the notebook you?
12	. If you want to work in some countries, you need a visa.
	You can't work in some countries you have a visa
13	. When she was very young, she love cartoons.
	She to love cartoons when she was young

14. Jone is	the most diligent girl.		
No c	one is as Jane.		
15. Maria p	refers coffee to tea.		
Mari	a likes coffee tea.		
16. We run because we want to get fit.			
We v	want to get fit we run.		
17. She was taught how to drive by a very good teacher.			
The	teacher taught her how to drive was very good.		
18. He took a long time to decide what to eat.			
He s	pent a long time what to eat.		
19. There are six bathrooms in that house.			
That house six bathrooms.			
20. The mansion is so expensive that we can't buy it.			
The	mansion is for us to buy.		
Directions : Transform the following sentences into Compound Sentence.			
1.	n spite of his failure, he was not sorry.		
2. (Owing to his bad health, he cannot work hard.		
3. [Besides making a promise, he keeps it.		
4. \	Without working hard, you will not get promotion.		
5. I	Having no money left, he was obliged to go away.		
•••			

Directions : Transform the following simple sentences into complex or compound sentences.

1	. Knocking at the gate, he demanded admission.
2.	Blinded by a dust storm, they lost their way.
3	Deceived by his friends, he lost all hope.
4	Driven by hunger, he stole a piece of bread.
5	Overwhelmed with grief, the poor widow killed herself.
6	. The sea being smooth, we went for a sail.
7	. Weather permitting, the match will be held tomorrow afternoon.
irection	ns : Transform the following complex sentences into simple sentences.
1	. After he had learned his lessons, he went out to play.
2	. While I was walking along the street, I saw a dead cobra.
3	. Although he was wealthy and educated, he never made a name.
4	. If you follow my advice, you will win your object.
5	. As he was driven out of his country, he sought asylum in a foreign land.
6	. A gypsy who was wandering across the fields found the baby.

Tenses

Tense ในภาษาอังกฤษนี้จะแบ่งออกเป็น 3 tense ใหญ่ๆ คือ

Present tense ปัจจุบัน
 Past tense อดีตกาล

3. Future tense อนาคตกาล

ในแต่ละ tense ยังแยกย่อยได้ tense ละ 4 คือ

Simple tense ธรรมดา (ง่ายๆตรงๆไม่ซับซ้อน)
 Continuous tense กำลังกระทำอยู่ (กำลังเกิดอยู่)
 Perfect tense สมบูรณ์ (ทำเรียบร้อยแล้ว)

4. Perfect continuous tense สมบูรณ์กำลังกระทำ (ทำเรียบร้อยแล้วและกำลัง

ดำเนินด้วย)

<u>โครงสร้าง tense และ หลักการใช้แต่ละ tense มีดังนี้</u>

Present Tense

 [1.1] S + Verb 1 +
 (บอกความจริงที่เกิดขึ้นง่ายๆ ตรงๆไม่ซับซ้อน)

 [1.2] S + is, am, are + Verb 1 ing +....
 (บอกว่าเดี๋ยวนี้กำลังเกิดอะไรอยู่)

 [1.3] S + has, have + Verb 3 +
 (บอกว่าได้ทำมาแล้วจนถึงปัจจุบัน)

[1.4] S + has, have + been + Verb1 ing + (บอกว่าได้ทำมาแล้วและกำลังทำต่อไปอีก)

[1.1] Present simple tense เช่น He walks.

- 1. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เกิดขึ้นตามความจริงของธรรมชาติ และคำสุภาษิต คำพังเพย
- 2. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เป็นความจริงในขณะที่พูด (ก่อนหรือหลังจะไม่จริงก็ตาม)
- 3. ใช้กับกริยาที่ทำนานไม่ได้ เช่น รัก, เข้าใจ, รู้ เป็นต้น
- 4. ใช้กับการกระทำที่คิดว่าจะเกิดขึ้นในอนาคตอันใกล้ (จะมีคำวิเศษณ์บอกอนาคตร่วมด้วย)
- ใช้ในการเล่าสรุปเรื่องต่างๆในอดีต เช่น นิยาย นิทาน
- 6. ใช้ในประโยคเงื่อนไขในอนาคตที่ต้นประโยคจะขึ้นต้นด้วยคำว่า If, unless, as soon as, till, whenever, while เป็นต้น
- 7. ใช้กับเรื่องที่กระทำอย่างสม่ำเสมอ และมีคำวิเศษณ์บอกเวลาที่สม่ำเสมอร่วมอยู่ด้วย เช่น always, often, every day เป็นต้น
- 8. ใช้ในประโยคที่คล้อยตามที่เป็น [1.1] ประโยคตามต้องใช้ [1.1] ด้วยเสมอ

[1.2] Present continuous tense เช่น He is walking.

- 1. ใช้ในเหตุการณ์ที่กำลังกระทำอยู่ในขณะที่พูด (ใช้ now ร่วมด้วยก็ได้ โดยใส่ไว้ต้นประโยค, หลังกริยา หรือ ท้ายประโยค ก็ได้)
- 2. ใช้ในเหตุการณ์ที่กำลังกระทำอยู่ในระยะเวลาอันยาวนาน เช่น ในวันนี้ ,ในปีนี้
- 3. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ผู้พูดมั่นใจว่าจะต้องเกิดขึ้นในอนาคตอันใกล้ เช่น เร็วๆนี้, พรุ่งนี้
 *หมายเหตุ กริยาที่ทำนานไม่ได้ เช่น รัก ,เข้าใจ, รู้, ชอบ จะนำมาแต่งใน Tense นี้ไม่ได้

[1.3] Present perfect tense เช่น He has walked.

- 1. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เกิดขึ้นแล้วในอดีต และต่อเนื่องมาจนถึงปัจจุบัน และจะมีคำว่า since (ตั้งแต่) และ for (เป็นเวลา) มาใช้ร่วมด้วย
- 2. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ได้เคยทำมาแล้วในอดีต (จะกี่ครั้งก็ได้ หรือจะทำอีกในปัจจุบัน หรือจะทำใน อนาคต ก็ได้) และจะมีคำว่า ever, never มาใช้ร่วมด้วย
- ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่จบลงแล้วแต่ผู้พูดยังประทับใจอยู่
- 4. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เพิ่งจบไปแล้วไม่นาน(ไม่ได้ประทับใจอยู่) ซึ่งจะมีคำเหล่านี้มาใช้ร่วมด้วยเสมอ คือ just, already, yet, finally เป็นต้น

[1.4] Present perfect continuous tense เช่น He has been walking.

* มีหลักการใช้เหมือน [1.3] ทุกประการ เพียงแต่เน้นว่าจะทำต่อไปในอนาคตด้วย ซึ่ง [1.3] นั้น
ไม่เน้นว่าได้กระทำอย่างต่อเนื่องหรือไม่ ส่วน [1.4] นี้ เน้นว่ากระทำมาอย่างต่อเนื่องและจะกระทำ ต่อไปในอนาคตอีกด้วย

Past Tense

- [2.1] S + Verb 2 + (บอกเรื่องที่เคยเกิดมาแล้วในอดีต)
- [2.2] S + was, were + Verb 1 ing +... (บอกเรื่องที่กำลังทำอยู่ในอดีต)
- [2.3] S + had + verb 3 + ... (บอกเรื่องที่ทำมาแล้วในอดีตในช่วงเวลาใด เวลาหนึ่ง)
- [2.4] S + had + been + verb 1 ing + ... (บอกเรื่องที่ทำมาแล้วอย่างต่อเนื่องไม่หยุด)

[2.1] Past simple tense เช่น He walked.

- 1. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เกิดขึ้นและจบลงแล้วในอดีต มิได้ต่อเนื่องมาถึงขณะที่พูด และมักมีคำต่อไปนี้ มาร่วมด้วยเสมอในประโยค เช่น yesterday, last year เป็นต้น
- 2. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ทำเป็นประจำในอดีตที่ผ่านมาในครั้งนั้นๆ ซึ่งต้องมีคำวิเศษณ์บอกความถี่ (เช่น always, every day) กับคำวิเศษณ์บอกเวลา (เช่น yesterday, last month) 2 อย่าง มาร่วมอยู่ด้วยเสมอ
- 3. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ได้เคยเกิดขึ้นมาแล้วในอดีต แต่ปัจจุบันไม่ได้เกิดอยู่ หรือไม่ได้เป็นดั่งในดีตนั้นแล้ว ซึ่งจะมีคำว่า ago ร่วมอยู่ด้วย
- 4. ใช้ในประโยคที่คล้อยตามที่เป็น [2.1] ประโยคคล้อยตามก็ต้อง เป็น [2.1] ด้วย

- [2.2] Past continuous tense เช่น He was walking .
- 1. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ 2 อย่างที่เกิดขึ้นไม่พร้อมกันในอดีต มีหลักการใช้ดังนี้ เกิดก่อนใช้ 2.2 เกิดทีหลังใช้ 2.1 เช่น

I was cleaning the house when my friends arrived at my house.

2. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์หรือการกระทำอันเดียวที่กำลังกระทำอยู่ในอดีต แต่ต้องระบุชั่วโมงและวัน ให้แน่ชัดไว้ในทุกประโยคด้วยทุกครั้ง เช่น

She was having breakfast at eight o' clock yesterday.

- 3. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ได้กระทำติดต่อกันตลอดเวลาที่ได้ระบุไว้ในประโยค ซึ่งจะมีคำบอกเวลา ร่วมอยู่ด้วยในประโยค เช่น all day yesterday etc.
- 4. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ 2 อย่างที่กำลังทำในเวลาเดียวกัน (ใช้เฉพาะกริยาที่ทำได้นานเท่านั้น หากเป็น กริยาที่ทำนานไม่ได้ ก็ใช้หลักข้อ 1) ถ้าแต่งด้วย 2.1 กับ 2.2 จะดูจืดชืด เช่น

He was cleaning the house while I was cooking breakfast.

[2.3] Past perfect tense เช่น He had walked. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ 2 อย่างที่เกิดขึ้นไม่พร้อมกันในอดีต (2.3 นี้ไม่นิยมใช้ตามลำพัง ถ้าเกิดก่อนใช้ 2.3 ถ้าเกิดทีหลังใช้ 2.1) เช่น

I had finished my homework before my mom came back home.

[2.4] past perfect continuous tense เช่น He had been walking. มีหลักการใช้เหมือนกับ 2.3 ทุกกรณี เพียงแต่ tense นี้ ต้องการย้ำถึงความต่อเนื่องของการกระทำที่ 1 ว่าได้กระทำต่อเนื่องไปจนถึงการกระทำที่ 2 โดยมิได้หยุด เช่น

When we arrived at the meeting, the lecturer had been speaking for an hour.

Future Tense

- [3.1] S + will, shall + verb 1 +.... (บอกเรื่องที่จะเกิดขึ้นในอนาคต)
- [3.2] S + will, shall + be Verb 1 ing + (บอกว่าอนาคตนั้นๆกำลังทำอะไรอยู่)
- [3.3] S + will, shall + have + Verb 3 +... (บอกเรื่องที่จะเกิดหรือสำเร็จในช่วงเวลาใด เวลาหนึ่งในอนาคต)
- [3.4] S + will, shall + have + been + verb 1 ing +.... (บอกเรื่องที่จะทำอย่างต่อเนื่อง ในเวลาใดเวลาหนึ่งในอนาคตและจะทำต่อไปเรื่อยข้างหน้า)
- [3.1] Future simple tense เช่น He will walk. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่จะเกิดขึ้นในอนาคต ซึ่งจะมีคำว่า tomorrow, tonight, next week, next month เป็นต้น มาร่วมอยู่ด้วย
 - * shall ใช้กับ I, we will ใช้กับบุรุษที่ 2, 3 และนามทั่วๆไป

will, shall จะใช้สลับกันในกรณีที่จะให้คำมั่นสัญญา, ข่มขู่บังคับ, ตกลงใจแน่วแน่

will, shall จะใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เกิดขึ้นโดยธรรมชาติหรือจงใจก็ได้

be going to + V.1 จะใช้กับความจงใจของมนุษย์เท่านั้น (ห้ามใช้กับเหตุการณ์ของธรรมชาติและ ไม่ใช้ในประโยคเงื่อนไข)

[3.2] Future continuous tense เช่น He will be walking.

- 1. ใช้ในการบอกกล่าวว่าในอนาคตนั้นกำลังทำอะไรอยู่ (ต้องกำหนดเวลาแน่นอนด้วยเสมอ) เช่น
 She will be sleeping at 5.00 a.m. tomorrow.
- 2. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ 2 อย่างที่จะเกิดขึ้นไม่พร้อมกันในอนาคต มีกลักการใช้ดังนี้
 - เกิดก่อนใช้ 3.2 S + will be, shall be + Verb 1 ing
 - เกิดที่หลังใช้ 1.1 S + Verb 1 เช่น She will be sleeping when I arrive at her house at 5.00 a.m. tomorrow.

[3.3] Future prefect tense เช่น He will have walked.

1. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่จะเกิดขึ้นหรือสำเร็จลงในเวลาใดเวลาหนึ่งในอนาคต โดยจะมีคำว่า by นำหน้า กลุ่มคำที่บอกเวลา เช่น by tomorrow, by next week เป็นต้น เช่น

I will have read this book by noon tomorrow.

- 2. ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ 2 อย่างที่จะเกิดขึ้นไม่พร้อมกันในอนาคต มีหลักดังนี้
 - เกิดก่อนใช้ 3.3 S + will, shall + have + Verb 3
 - เกิดที่หลังใช้ 1.1 S + Verb 1 เช่น

I will have read this book by the time my teacher come in this class.

[3.4] Future prefect continuous tense เช่น

He will have been walking.

ใช้เหมือน 3.3 ต่างกันเพียงแต่ว่า 3.4 นี้เน้นถึงการกระทำที่ 1 ได้ทำต่อเนื่องมาจนถึงการกระทำที่ 2 และจะกระทำต่อไปในอนาคต อีกด้วย

**Tense นี้ไม่ค่อยนิยมใช้บ่อยนัก โดยเฉพาะกริยาที่ทำนานไม่ได้ อย่านำมาแต่งใน Tense นี้เด็ดขาด

Exercises

<u>EX</u>	<u>cercise i</u> Choose t	he best answer.				
1.	Joe away when	n he saw me.				
	1. walk	2. walks	3. walke	ed	4.	is walking
2.	What time his	train yester	day?			
	1. is / leav	ving	2.	did / leave	<u>,</u>	
	3. was / le	eaving	4.	did / left		
3.	While he was living wi	th us, heus	a lot.			
	1. helps	2. has helped	3. help	ed	4.	had helped
4.	Where when the	ne fire broke out?				
	1. are you	ı	2.	were you		
	3. are you	ı being	4.	were you k	beir	ng
5.	While Linda was cooki	•	_			
	1. washes			is washing		
		shed		was washir	•	
6.	Did he always					
		2. did	_		4.	done
7.	I up early every	·				
		2. got		etting	4.	was getting
8.	English and French	·				
		2. spoke	3. are sp	oken	4.	were spoker
9.	Will they for us					
		2. waiting	3. be wa	aited	4.	be waiting
10	. I to work hard					
		2. am	3. will		4.	am going
11	. The train has just					
		2. leaves	3. left		4.	is leaving
12	. He has five aco			g.		
		2. having	3. has		4.	have
13	. More and more rice i					
		2. ate	3. eating		4.	eaten
14	. We there yest	erday.	•			
	1. stop		2.	have stopp	bed	

4. have been stopping

3. stopped

15.	you a good time last week	end?	
	1. Did / have	2. Did / had	
	3. Have / had	4. Have / hav	ve
16.	They married next summer.		
	1. get 2. gets	3. are getting	4. got
17.	At six o'clock yesterday, I in	my room.	
	1. sleep 2. was sleeping	3. slept	4. were sleeping
18.	I was by a big dog yesterday.		
	1. being chased 2. chased	3. chasing	4. chase
19.	The key by the servant.		
	1. has found	2. has been	found
	3. have found	4. has been	finding
20.	Cows are sacred in India.		
	1. consider	2. considered	d
	3. considering	4. considers	
21.	They six glasses this week.		
	1. already break	2. have alrea	ady broken
	3. already broken	4. have alrea	ndy been broken
22.	When I young, I liked to eat ba	ananas.	
	1. am 2. was being	3. was	4. were
23.	I in the garden when it started t	to rain.	
	1. work 2. worked	3. was working	4. were working
24.	As soon as the pickpocket the	e policeman, he ran awa	ay.
	1. sees 2. were seen	3. was seeing	4. saw
25.	Are you ready? Not yet. We	ready in ten minutes.	
	1. have got 2. were getting	3. got	4. will get
26.	The maid the floor when th	e phone rang.	
	1. was sweeping	2. has swept	
	3. sweeps	4. swept	
27.	I the telephone bill yet.		
	1. haven't paid	2. didn't pay	•
	3. don't pay	4. wasn't pa	ying
28.	I came back from school twenty minu	utes	
	1. since 2. already	3. ago 4. tl	nen

2)). Have	e you finished	d your hom	iework? -	No,			
	1	. not yet	2.	never	3.	ever	4.	then
30). Sam	has c	ome back	from school.				
	1	. ever	2.	just	3.	since	4.	yet
<u>E</u> ×	<u>cercise</u>	e 2 In each	of the foll	owing sente	ences,	determine wh	eth	er each sentence
		is corre	ct. If it is ir	ncorrect, co	rect it	. If it is correc	ct, v	rite "correct".
1.	The p	oolice has not	decided v	vhether or n	ot to c	harge the three	e yo	ung men with
	posse	ession of illeg	al drugs.					
	_							
2.	Nancy	tried to tell	me that a	l the things	Bob sa	id was true.		
	_							
3.	When	she came in	she imme	diately sat th	ne pacl	kage on the ne	eares	st table.
	_							
4.	The g	allery owner	told us tha	at he already	return	ned the works	of la	st month's exhibition
	to th	e various arti:	sts.					
	_							
5.	The b	oranches of a	bush usua	lly rises dired	ctly fro	m the ground	and	do not spread out
	from	a central tru	nk.					
	_							
6.	We go	ot up early, a	te breakfas	t, and clean	ed the	house – all be	efore	e my aunt arrived.
	_							
7.	Wher	ı you go to vi	sit the Brov	vns tomorro	w, plea	ase give them t	thes	e cake recipes.
_	_				-11			
8.	Rarely	y are animal _l	oroducts, s	uch as meat	, milk,	or eggs, sold d	irect	ly to the consumer.
0	_							uthi an anna 1
9.			•		i, canal	is were built pi	rıma	rily to control
	floor	lwaters and t		1 .				
8.	Rarely	y are animal	oroducts, s Mesopotam	uch as meat	, milk,		irect	e cake recipes. Ely to the consume

10.	They rose their hands above their heads when the teacher asked them to raise their hands.
11.	It's fortunate that he hasn't never forgotten how to speak his native language as he was very young when he left his country.
12.	My book had three torn pages, which I tried to tape before I left home.
13.	Michael tried to get a large group to clean up the park but he had found only one person willing to help.
14.	If you had gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have enjoyed seeing our team win.
15.	Even though many people had already did it, she did not want to.
16.	A barometer is a device used to measure atmospheric pressure.
17.	My sister cut her finger rather deeply, so mother and I take her to hospital.
18.	When we visited the Bahamas last summer, we had seen some amazing fish.
19.	This morning, all Bangkok banks in the capital announce that interest rates for all Bua Luang Projects would be raised to 10%.
20.	When you arrived at the theater, please look for us.
****	***************************************

Connectors / Conjunction

Connectors / Conjunction ไม่ใช่ทำหน้าที่เป็นเพียงแค่ไวยากรณ์อย่างเดียวเท่านั้น แต่ยังจะช่วยให้เรา สามารถพัฒนาทักษะการอ่านและการเขียนได้เป็นอย่างดี

Connectors / Conjunction ใช้ในการเชื่อมประโยค กับ ประโยค หรือ คำ กับ คำ การเลือกตัวเชื่อมมีหลายวิธีด้วยกัน อาจเลือกจากความหมายของประโยค เชื่อมเพื่อลำดับเวลา หรือ กรณีอื่นๆ ตัวเชื่อมประโยคที่เน้นความหมายแบ่งออกเป็นหลายกลุ่ม เช่น

- ประโยคบอกความคล้อยตามกัน หรือ เสริมความเพิ่มเติม

and (และ)

besides (นอกจาก)

as well as (และ , เช่นเดียวกันกับ)

furthermore (ยิ่งไปกว่านั้น)

both ... and (ทั้ง ... และ)

not only ... but also (ไม่เพียงแต่ ... แต่ยัง)

in addition (และ)

moreover (ยิ่งไปกว่านั้น)

- ประโยคบอกความขัดแย้ง

although / though , even though , even if (ถึงแม้ว่า)

however (อย่างไรก็ตาม)

but (แต่)

still (ยังคง)

vet (แต่กระนั้น)

nonetheless , nevertheless (แต่กระนั้นก็ตาม)

no matter what (ไม่ว่าอะไรก็ตาม)

no matter how (ไม่ว่าอย่างไรก็ตาม)

- ประโยคที่ต้องเลือกเอาอย่างใดอย่างหนึ่ง
 - either...or (ไม่อย่างใดก็อย่างหนึ่ง) , neither...nor (ไม่ทั้งคู่)
- ประโยคบอกเหตุ

because, as, since, for (เพราะว่า, เนื่องจาก)

- ประโยคบอกผล

so , therefore , thus , hence , thereby , accordingly , consequently (ดังนั้น)

- ประโยคบอกวัตถุประสงค์
 - in order that , so that (เพื่อที่ว่า)
- กลุ่มคำที่แสดงความขัดแย้ง

despite , in spite of (แม้ว่า)

- กลุ่มคำที่ใช้บอกเหตุ

due to, owing to, as a result of, on account of, because of, thanks to (เพราะว่า, เนื่องจาก)

- กลุ่มคำที่บอกตัวอย่าง

such as (เช่น)

- กลุ่มคำที่ใช้บอกวัตถุประสงค์

in order to, so as to (เพื่อที่จะ)

And (และ) ใช้เชื่อมข้อความคล้อยตาม กันสอดคล้องกันหรือเป็นไปทำนองเดียวกัน เช่น

- We eat with fork and a spoon.
- Tina and Tom are playing football.
- Or (หรือ) ใช้เชื่อมข้อความเพื่อเลือกอย่างใดอย่างหนึ่ง เช่น
 - Is your house big **or** small
 - Would you like tea **or** coffee
- But (แต่) ใช้เชื่อมข้อความที่ขัดแย้งกัน เช่น
 - That house is beautiful **but** very expensive.
 - I can ride a bicycle **but** I can't ride a horse.

Because (เพราะว่า) ใช้เชื่อมข้อความที่เป็นเหตุเป็นผลกันโดย because จะนำหน้าประโยคที่ เป็น สาเหตุ เช่น

- I like my sister **because** she is pretty.
- She can pass the exam **because** she studies hard.

<u>So</u> (ดังนั้น) ใช้เชื่อมข้อความที่เป็นเหตุเป็นผลกันโดย so จะนำหน้าประโยคที่เป็น ผล เช่น

- Cathy eats a lot **so** she is fat.
- My sister is pretty **so** I like her.

Though / although (แม้ว่า) ใช้เชื่อมข้อความที่ขัดแย้งกัน เช่น

- Although he ran very fast, he didn't win the first prize.

- <u>Either....or</u> (เลือกอย่างใดอย่างหนึ่งใน 2อย่าง) ถ้านำมาเชื่อมประโยคในส่วนที่เป็นประธาน จะใช้คำกริยาตามประธานตัวหลัง เช่น
 - Either you or he is wrong.
 - You can get either this pen or that pencil.
- Neithernor (ไม่ทั้ง 2อย่าง) ถ้านำมาเชื่อมประโยคในส่วนที่เป็นประธานจะ ใช้คำกริยาตาม ประธานตัวหลัง เช่น
 - Neither I nor she speaks English.
- So that (เพื่อว่า) ตามด้วยประโยค (Clause) เสมอ กริยาของประโยคที่ตามหลัง so that จะต้อง อยู่ในรูป may หรือ might หรือ should + Verb ช่องที่ 1 เช่น
- I stepped aside **so that** she might go in. ถ้าต้องการเปลี่ยนประโยค Complex Sentence ที่มี so that มาเชื่อม ไปเป็น Simple Sentence ก็สามารถทำได้โดยใช้ in order to หรือ so as to + Verb ช่องที่ 1 ได้ เช่น
 - He gave up smoking in order to / so as to get better.
- So that (มาก...จนกระทั่ง) คำที่อยู่ระหว่าง so...that ได้แก่ Adjective หรือ Adverb เท่านั้น แต่บางครั้งหลัง Adjective จะมีนามมาร่วมด้วยก็ได้ มีโครงสร้างดังนี้
 - so + [Adverb/Adjective/Adj.+Noun] + that เช่น
 - Wichai runs so fast that I cannot overtake him.
- Such that (มาก ... จนกระทั่ง) คำที่อยู่ระหว่าง such...that ได้แก่ นาม โดยมี Adjective มา ขยายอยู่ข้างหน้า มีโครงสร้างดังนี้
 - แบบ A such a + Adjective + นามเอกพจน์นับได้ + that เช่น
 - He is such a good boy that everyone likes him.

such a + Adjective + นามเอกพจน์นับได้ **+ that** ในแบบ A นั้นจะใช้ so...that มาแทนก็ได้ แต่ ต้องเขียนโครงสร้างใหม่ คือ ให้ a มาอยู่ชิดกับนามเอกพจน์ที่นับได้ เป็นดังนี้

so + Adjective + a + นามเอกพจน์นับได้ + that เช่น

- He is ${f so}$ good a boy ${f that}$ I like him.
- (= He is **such** a good boy **that** I like him.)
- <u>แบบ B</u> such + [Adjective+นามพหูพจน์ / Adjective+นามนับไม่ได้] + that เช่น
 - They are **such** heavy boxes **that** I can hardly lift them up.
- In order to / So as to (เพื่อที่จะ) ตามด้วย Infinitive (กริยาช่องที่ 1) ทั้งนี้เพื่อเชื่อมเนื้อความ
 2 ประโยคให้เป็นหนึ่งประโยค เช่น
 - I shall go on working late tonight so as to be free tomorrow.
 - (= I shall go on working late tonight. I shall be free tomorrow.)

- In order that (เพื่อว่า) in order that ต่างจาก in order to ตรงที่ว่า in order to ตามด้วย infinitive ส่วน in order that ตามด้วยประโยค (Clause) ตลอดไป เช่น
 - Children go to school in order that they may learn things.
 - (= Children go to school in order to learn things.)
- Lest (มีความหมายเท่ากับ so that...not แปลว่า "เพื่อจะได้ไม่") ประโยคที่ตามหลัง lest ต้องใช้ should (แทน may, might) ตลอดไป และใช้ได้กับทุกบุรุษอีกด้วย เช่น
 - He works harder **lest** he should (may) fail.
- As long as / So long as (เมื่อ, ถ้า) สันธานคู่ (Correlative Conjunction) ตัวนี้ นิยมวางไว้ ต้นประโยคมากกว่ากลางประโยค และเมื่อจบประโยคข้างหน้าต้องใส่ เครื่องหมาย Comma (,) ทันที เช่น
 - As (so) long as you come here in time, you will see her.
- <u>If</u> (**ถ้า, หาก)** คำนี้เมื่อเชื่อมประโยคจะวางไว้ต้นหรือกลางประโยคทั้งสองก็ได้ ถ้าวางไว้ต้นประโยค เมื่อจบประโยคท่อนแรกให้ใส่ Comma (,) เช่น
 - If the weather holds good, we shall stay another week.

แต่ถ้าวาง if ไว้กลางประโยคทั้งสอง ไม่ต้อง Comma เช่น

- We shall stay here another week **if** the weather holds good.
- Unless (ถ้า...ไม่, เว้นเสียแต่ว่า...ไม่) มีความหมายเท่ากับ if...not เมื่อนำมาเชื่อมจะวางไว้ต้น หรือกลางประโยคก็ได้ เช่น
 - We shall go unless it rains.
 - หรือ Unless it rains, we shall go.
 - (= We shall go **if** it does not rain.)
- But that (ถ้า...ไม่) มีความหมายเหมือนกับ if...not เมื่อนำมาเชื่อมความ จะวางไว้ต้นหรือกลาง ประโยคก็ได้ แต่ต้องตามหลังด้วยประโยคและอย่าใช้ not ในประโยคที่ตามหลัง but that เพราะ but that มีความหมายเป็นปฏิเสธอยู่แล้ว เช่น
 - She would have fallen but that I caught her.
 - But that he is in debt, he would enter priesthood.
- But for แปลว่า "ถ้า...ไม่" เหมือนกับ but that ต่างกันแต่ว่า หลัง but that เป็นประโยค ส่วนหลัง but for เป็นนาม เช่น
 - But for my help, he should have failed last year.
 - (=But that I helped him, he should have failed last year.)

Inasmuch as (เพราะ, ด้วยเหตุที่) มีความหมายเท่ากับ because จะวางไว้ต้นหรือกลาง ประโยคทั้งสองที่ไปเชื่อมก็ได้ เช่น

- He yielded to the invader, **inasmuch as** his army was thoroughly defeated.
- Inasmuch as he is sick, he had better go to hospital.

Or else (หรือมิฉะนั้น) มีความหมายเท่ากับ Otherwise นิยมใช้เชื่อมประโยค (Clause) มากกว่า คำหรือวลี เช่น

- I must clean it, or else it will be rusty.

Provided และ Providing (ถ้าหากว่า) คำทั้งสองก็เป็นสันธานอันหนึ่ง มีหน้าที่เชื่อมประโยคเหมือน สันธานทั่วๆไป แต่เวลานำมาใช้ provided จะตามด้วย that เสมอ ส่วน providing ไม่ต้องมี that เช่น

- We shall go **provided that** it does not rain.
- Amy will go **providing** her friend can go together.

Supposing (ถ้า, สมมติว่า) คำนี้นิยมไว้ต้นของประโยคหน้า หรือใช้กับ Clause หน้า เช่น

- Supposing you win the government lottery, what do you buy?

Since (ตั้งแต่, เพราะว่า, เนื่องจากว่า) ถ้าแปลว่า "ตั้งแต่" ใช้เชื่อมระหว่างประโยค Present Perfect หรือ Present Simple กับ Past Simple เช่น

- He has worked hard **since** his father died.

ถ้าแปลว่า "เพราะว่า. เนื่องจากว่า" ให้วางไว้หน้า Clause ของประโยคแรก เช่น

- Since he doesn't learn English, he can't speak it.

As soon as (เมื่อ = when) แต่ใช้ความหมายฉับพลันกว่า when เช่น

- I shall go back **as soon as** he arrives.

จะวาง as soon as ไว้หน้า Clause แรกก็ได้ แต่ต้องใส่ Comma เมื่อจบความของประโยคแรก เช่น

- As soon as he arrives. I will tell him.

In case (ในกรณีที่, เผื่อว่า) ตามด้วยประโยค (Clause) วิธีใช้ก็เช่นเดียวกับ so that, for fear that คือ จะต้องตามด้วย may, might, should, can, could ตัวใดตัวหนึ่ง เช่น

- Don't go too near the river in case you should fall in it.

ถ้า In case วางไว้หน้า Clause แรก ไม่ต้องตามด้วย can, could, should, may, might เช่น

- In case I forget, please remind me about that.

In case of (ในกรณีที่, เผื่อว่า) ตามด้วยคำนาม เช่น

- In case of fire, please inform the fire-brigade.

- Either of + นามพหูพจน์ = (อย่างใดอย่างหนึ่ง) ถ้าไปเป็นประธานในประโยค กริยาต้องใช้เอกพจน์ ตลอดไป เช่น
 - Either of you is wrong.
 - I don't want **either of** the apples.
- Neither of + นามพหูพจน์ = (ไม่ทั้งสองอย่าง) ถ้าเป็นประธาน กริยาใช้เอกพจน์ เช่น
 - Neither of the books is of any use to me.
 - I want **neither of** them.
- No sooner.....than (พอ...ก็) คำนี้เป็น Conjunctive ใช้เชื่อมประโยคทั้งสองเข้าด้วยกัน ประโยคที่ no sooner...than ไปเชื่อมมักเป็นประโยค Past Perfect กับ Past Simple เช่น
 - He had **no sooner** seen it **than** he started to run.

หรือจะวาง No sooner ไว้ต้นประโยคก็ได้ เช่น

- No sooner had he arrived than he was told to start back again.

Parallel Structure

Parallel structure คือ การเชื่อมประโยคให้มีโครงสร้างทางไวยากรณ์สอดคล้องกัน ไม่ว่าจะ เป็นคำ วลี หรืออนุประโยค ซึ่งโดยปกติจะถูกเชื่อมโดย conjunction ต่าง ๆ มีหลักการใช้ ดังนี้

1. การเชื่อมคำให้สอดคล้องกัน เช่น ถ้าข้างหน้า conjunction เป็นคำนาม ก็ต้องเชื่อมด้วย คำนาม ถ้าข้างหน้า conjunction เป็นคำกริยา ก็ต้องเชื่อมด้วยคำกริยา เป็นต้น เช่น

My father is tall, dark and handsome.

(ประโยคนื้อธิบายลักษณะของพ่อ โดยใช้ adjective ดังนั้นคำที่เหลือจึงต้องใช้ adjective ทั้งหมด) Somsak bought a bag and a shirt for Somsri .

(ประโยคนี้บอกว่าสมศักดิ์ ซื้อของให้สมศรีโดยใช้คำนาม ดังนั้นคำที่เหลือจึงต้องใช้คำนามทั้งหมด)

2. เชื่อมคำกริยาให้สอดคล้องกันทั้ง form และ tense เช่น

The students enjoy watching movie and listening to music. (ประโยคนี้อธิบายว่านักเรียนสนุกกับการทำอะไรโดยใช้ gerund ดังนั้นคำที่เหลือจึงต้องใช้ gerund ทั้งหมด)

3. ถ้าเชื่อมด้วยวลีก็ต้องวลีเหมือนกัน เชื่อมด้วยประโยคก็ต้องเป็นประโยคเหมือนกัน เช่น Ann doesn't like raw fish, but she likes raw oysters. (เชื่อมประโยคกับประโยค) To balance the budget and to provide good jobs are two goals of the new president. (เชื่อมวลีกับวลีซึ่งนำหน้าด้วย to-infinitive)

คำเชื่อมที่นิยมนำมาเชื่อมคำวลี หรือประโยคเข้าด้วยกันเพื่อเน้นความเป็น parallel structure ได้แก่ and, but, or, not only...but also, both...and, either...or, neither...nor, whether...or, from...to, between...and, as well as

- The teacher <u>not only</u> asked us to write the essay, <u>but also</u> assigned us 20 extra pages of homework.

......

Exercises

Connectors (Conjunctions) / Parallel Structure

DIRECTIONS; choose the correct answer.

1.	I wanted	d to eat fish fo	or lunchA tl	he fishB chip sh	op had closed
	for the	day.			
	Α	1. and	2. or	3. but	4. so
	В	1. so	2. but	3. or	4. and
2.	My teet	h were hurtin	gB	. an appointment to go	o to the dentist.
	Α	1. or	2. so	3. and	4. but
	В	1. make	2. do	3. made	4. did
3.	My fath	er wanted to	watch a soccer ma	atch on televisionA	my mother
	B	. already wato	thed another progr	am.	
	Α	1. but	2. and	3. so	4. or
	В	1. was	2. is	3. had	4. has
4.	Reception	onists must be	e able toA info	ormationB pass mes	ssages accurately.
	Α	1. relaid	2. relay	3. relayed	4. relain
	В	1. or	2. and	3. but	4. because
5.	I did no	t go to the sh	owA I had a	alreadyB it.	
	Α	1. until	2. because	3. so	4. but
	В	1. see	2.saw	3. seen	4. seeing
6.	Mary	A a mem	ber of the Historica	al SocietyB the I	_iterary Society.
	Α	1. is	2. was	3. do	4. does
	В	1. as	2. or	3. and	4. but
7.	Read ov	er your answ	ersA correct	all mistakes before yo	u passB up
	А	1. or	2. and	3. because	4. while
	В	1. it	2. them	3. us	4. they
8.	Keep th	e food covere	edA the flie	s will contaminate	3
	A.	1. or	2. and	3. until	4. though
	В	1. hey	2. them	3. it	4. us
9.	A	. he is thin, h	eB strong.		
	Α	1. But	2. As	3. Though	4. Because
	В	1.is	2. be	3. was	4. been

10. Susie	A phoned	B wrote after	she left home. I ha	ve never heard
anythin	g from her since	then.		
А	1. either	2. neither	3. while	4. though
В	1. or	2. nor	3. and	4. or
11. She had	d an unpleasant	experienceA.	sheB in Th	nailand.
Α	1. but	2. and	3. because	4. while
В	1. is	2. was	3. has	4. had
12. The co	mmittee rejecte	d the proposal	A they did not thin	k itB practical.
Α	1. or	2. but	3. though	4. because
В	1. is	2. was	3. does not	4. did not
13. John w	elcomed his gue	estsA B	them drinks.	
Α	1. and	2. while	3. until	4. as
В	1. offer	2. offers	3. offered	4. offering
14. I like	A dogsB	cats.		
Α	1. only	2. both	3. neither	4. either
В	1. also	2. but	3. and	4. until
15. Luke w	as late to the pa	artyA his ca	arB down on	the highway.
Α	1. if	2. because	3. while	4. although
В	1. break	2. breaks	3. broke	4. broken
DIRECTION:	S; choose the o	correct answer.		
1. The egg v	was bad :	, he threw	it away.	
	1. as a result		2. because	
	3. due to		4. thank to	
2	the critics,	this film is excelle	ent.	
	 According 	to	2. Owing to	
	3. In spite of	•	4. Besides	
3. I pulled t	he curtains	the sun n	night shine in.	
	1. therefore		2. in order th	at
	3. and also		4. in spite of	
4. Have son	nething to eat, _	you won't	feel hungry later.	
	1. so that		2. on accoun	t of
	3. when		4. since	

5. "Why weren't you hurt?"	
"I would have beenn	ny seat belt."
1. but for	2. because
3. in case of	4. thanks for
6. We didn't buy the camera	the high price.
1. in spite of	2. because
3. despite	4. because of
7 she is very nice, she has m	nany friends.
1. Because of	2. Thank to
3. Owing to	4. Because
8. The hotel is quiet clean;, it	is not expensive.
1. and / but	2. but / and
3. and / and	4. but / but
9. My secretary is sick;, I have	e to write all my letters myself.
1. however	2. consequently
3. though	4. or
10 they come in time, they w	ill catch the 6.00 a.m. train.
1. So as to	2. In order that
3. As long as	4. So that
11. I'll buy that beautiful handbag	its high price.
1. inspite of	2. although
3. since	4. despite of
12. They are friendly people	everyone likes them.
1. such that	2. such a that
3. as as	4. so that
13. Everyone kept quiet wake	him up.
1. so as to	2. so not as to
3. so as not to	4. not so as to
14 nice the trip is, I don't like it.	
1. Although	2. As
3. However	4. Since
15you do, don't let this hap	open again.
1. Nevertheless	2. No matter
3. Whatever	4. What

<u>DIRECTIONS</u>: Rewrite the following sentences using the connector given.

1.	The journey was very tiring. I slept all day when I got home. (such)
2.	Even though it was raining, the wedding ceremony took place outdoors. (despite)
3.	He bought a small car. He was able to park more carefully. (so as to)
4.	She prefer working in the garden to playing cards. (would rather)
5.	Put a hat on or you will get sunstroke. (for fear that) (lest) (in order that) (in order not to)
6.	As soon as he saw it, he started to run. (no sooner than)
7.	He has been playing all afternoon. He doesn't get on with his work. (instead of)
8.	It's going to rain this evening. That's what the newspaper says. (according to)
9.	I got to school. The bell rang at that very moment. (as soon as)
10	Anong recovered from her illness. She made a lot of progress in her learning. (Not onlybut also)
11.	She is not good at English. She is not fond of mathematics either. (neithernor)
12.	He may come here today. He may come here tomorrow. (eitheror)

13.	I finished eating my breakfast. John came to see me. (scarcelywhen)	
Rev	write the following sentences by using the word or words given.	•••
1.	As soon as he saw it, he started to run. (no sooner than)	
2.	She did not take an umbrella, so she got wet. (if)	
3.	He worked hard but didn't succeed. (In spite of)	
4.	She left early so as to catch her train. (so that)	
5.	The box is too heavy for her to lift. (such that)	
6.	Sam prefers fishing to swimming. (would rather)	
7.	Somsak is such a good boxer that he wins the gold medal. (sothat)	
8.	We put off our meeting because of the rain. (because) (so)	
9.	I won't help him if he doesn't try to improve himself. (unless)	
10.	Mr. Brown is old, but he is active. (Although) (Despite)	
11.	I am not the Prime Minister ; otherwise, I would solve economic problem.	(If)
12.	She is too weak to walk. (sothat)	

13.	The mansion is so expensive that we can't buy it. (tooforfor)
14.	He has been playing all afternoon. He doesn't get on with his work. (instead of)
15.	It's going to rain this evening. That's what the newspaper says. (according to)
16.	I got to school. The bell rang at that very moment. (as soon as)
17.	Anong recovered from her illness. She made a lot of progress in her learning. (Not onlybut also)
18.	She is not good at English. She is not fond of mathematics either. (neithernor)
19.	He may come here today. He may come here tomorrow. (eitheror)
20.	I finished eating my breakfast. John came to see me. (scarcelywhen)

<u>DIRECTIONS</u>: <u>Select the sentence that illustrates the use of proper parallel construction.</u>

- 1. A. She likes to listen to music and reading the latest novels.
 - B. She likes listening to music and reading the latest novels.
- 2. A. He spent his time studying Spanish, working at the convenience store, and jogging every afternoon.
 - B. He spent his time studying Spanish. working at the convenience store, and he jogged every afternoon.
- 3. A. The dog was excited: running, barking, and he chased after the boys.
 - B. The dog was excited: running, barking, and chasing after the boys.
- 4. A. The apartment was filled with old newspapers, broken bottles, and the astray were overflowing.
 - B. The apartment was filled with old newspapers, broken bottles, and overflowing ashtrays.

- 5. A. Phuong Tran has wit, charm, and she has an extremely pleasant personality.
 - B. Phuong Tran has wit, charm, and a pleasing personality.
- 6. A. In English class, Tashonda learned to read poems critically and to appreciate good prose.
 - B. In English class, Tashonda learned to read poems critically and she appreciated good prose.
- 7. A. Raoul's QPA is higher than Ralph.
 - B. Raoul's QPA is higher than Ralph's.
- 8. A. He wanted three things out of college: to learn a skill, to make good friends, and to learn about life.
 - B. He wanted three things out of college: to learn a skill, to make good friends, and learning about life.
- 9. A. Coach Espinoza was a brilliant strategist, a caring mentor, and a wise friend.
 - B. Coach Espinoza was a brilliant strategist, a caring mentor, and friend.
- 10. A. We found the film repulsive, offensive, and we thought it was embarrassing.
 - B. We found the film repulsive, offensive, and embarrassing.
- 11. A. Mr. Nguyen kept his store clean, neat, and he made it conveniently arranged.
 - B. Mr. Nguyen kept his store clean, neat, and conveniently arranged.
- 12. A. Professor Ali rewarded his students for working hard on the final project and going beyond the call of duty.
 - B. Professor Ali rewarded his students for their hard work on the final project and going beyond the call of duty.
- 13. A. There's nothing I like better than finding a good trout stream, setting up camp, and spending a couple of days fishing.
 - B. There's nothing I like better than finding a good trout stream, setting up camp, and to spend a couple of days fishing.

Wishes and Conditional Sentences

หลักการใช้ประโยคแสดง 'ความปรารถนา' ในภาษาอังกฤษ (Wish Sentences)

1. ประโยคแสดงความปรารถนาที่อยากให้เกิดขึ้นตอนนี้ (ปัจจุบัน)

ใช้รูปประโยค I wish + past simple เช่น

I wish I were beside him.

ฉันปรารถนาที่จะอยู่ข้าง ๆ เขา (ตอนนี้ยังไม่ได้อยู่ข้างๆ เขา)

I wish I passed the examination.

ฉันอยากจะผ่านการสอบครั้งนี้ (ตอนนี้ยังสอบไม่ผ่าน)

I wish she came to school.

ฉันหวังว่าเธอจะมาโรงเรียน (ตอนที่พูด เธอยังไม่มาโรงเรียน)

2. ประโยคแสดงความปรารถนาที่อยากให้เกิดขึ้นในอดีต

ใช้รูปประโยค I wish + past perfect เช่น

I wish I had studied in this University.

ฉันอยากจบการศึกษาจากมหาวิทยาลัยนี้ (พูดถึงอดีตว่าอยากเรียนจบที่นี่)

I wish I hadn't met him.

ฉันอยากจะไม่ได้พบเขา (แสดงว่าปัจจุบันพบแล้ว)

I wish I hadn't talked to him like that.

ฉันอยากจะไม่พูดแบบนั้นกับเขา (ได้พูดแบบนั้นกับเขาไปแล้วในอดีต)

3. ประโยคแสดงความปรารถนาที่อยากให้เกิดขึ้นในอนาคต

ใช้รูปประโยค I wish + would + V1 เช่น

I wish I would be here tomorrow.

ฉันอยากจะให้ตัวเองอยู่ที่นี่ในวันพรุ่งนี้

I wish I would meet him in December.

ฉันปรารถนาที่จะได้พบเขาในเดือนธันวาคม

I wish I would be student of this college next year.

ฉันอยากจะเป็นนักศึกษาของวิทยาลัยนี้ในปีหน้า

I wish she wouldn't come next week.

ฉันหวังว่าเธอจะไม่ได้ไปในสัปดาห์หน้า

การใช้ wish อวยพร (I wish you + Noun / wish someone something)

การใช้ wish อวยพร เราจะใช้รูปแบบโครงสร้าง I wish you + Noun / wish someone something เช่น I wish you a happy birthday.

(เราจะไม่ใช้ I wish you are happy. แต่เราจะใช้ I hope you are happy.) เรามักจะใช้ I wish you luck / all the best / a happy birthday etc. ตัวอย่างเช่น

I wish you a happy birthday.

I wish you happiness! (ไม่ใช่ I wish you happy.)

ขอให้มีความสุข, ขออวยพรให้คุณมีความสุข

I wish you all the happiness in life. ขออวยพรให้ชีวิตคุณมีความสุขยิ่ง

I wish you luck! โชคดีนะ, ขอให้คุณโชคดี

Wish you all the best. ขอให้คุณพบกับสิ่งที่ดีที่สุด

Wish you all the best success and happiness.

ขอให้คุณประสพความสำเร็จอย่างดีที่สุดและมีความสุข

I wish you good health and wealth. ขอให้คุณมีสุขภาพดีและร่ำรวย

I wish you success in life. ขอให้ประสบความสำเร็จในชีวิต

เราอาจใช้คำว่า Wishing แทน I wish ก็ได้ โดยใช้โครงสร้างเหมือนกับ wish ได้เลย ตัวอย่างเช่น

Wishing you a happy birthday.

Wishing you happiness!

Wishing you all the best success and happiness.

ข้อควรระวัง เราจะไม่ใช้ wish you + verb เช่น

I wish you are happy. แบบนี้ไม่ถูกต้อง ถ้าจะใช้โครงสร้างแบบนี้ให้ใช้คำว่า hope แทน wish

I hope you are happy.

I hope you are healthy and rich.

I hope you are successful in life.

หลักการใช้ Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences หรือ if-clause คือ ประโยคเงื่อนไข ประกอบด้วยประโยคย่อย สองประโยค ประโยคหนึ่งขึ้นต้นด้วยคำว่า If กับอีกประโยคหนึ่งเหมือนประโยคสมบูรณ์ทั่วไป สังเกต ว่า ประโยคสองประโยคนี้สลับที่กันได้ จะยกประโยคไหนขึ้นต้นก็ได้ แล้วแต่การเน้นและความหมาย

1. ZERO Conditional Sentences

วิธีใช้ : ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เป็นความจริง

Zero conditional sentences ใช้สำหรับพูดถึงความจริงทั่วไป โดยใช้ present simple ใน ประโยคทั้งสองประโยค (ประโยคหนึ่งจะอยู่ในรูปของ if-clause ส่วนอีกประโยคจะอยู่ในรูปของ main-clause)

1. If + present simple, present simple.

ประโยคแบบ zero conditional sentences ใช้พูดถึงกรณีที่ถ้าเกิดสิ่งหนึ่ง ต้องเกิดอีกสิ่งหนึ่งเสมอ เช่น

If water reaches 100 degrees, it boils.

เมื่ออุณหภูมิน้ำสูงเท่ากับ 100 องศาเซลเซียส น้ำจะเดือดเสมอ

If I eat peanuts, I am sick.

ถ้าฉันกินถั่วลิสงฉันจะแพ้

ซึ่งประโยคลักษณะนี้ เราจะใช้คำว่า when (เมื่อ) แทน if ก็ได้

**Zero conditional sentences แบบที่ 1 จะใช้พูดถึงเรื่องจริงทั่วๆไป

2. If + present simple, V.1 + O. (Command คำสั่ง)

If John arrives, tell him to wait for me.

3. If + present simple, please + V.1 + O. (Request ขอร้อง)

If you know Chinese, please explain this note for me.

2. FIRST Conditional Sentences

วิธีใช้ : ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่เป็นเหตุเป็นผลซึ่งกันและกัน

First conditional sentences ใช้สำหรับพูดว่าถ้าสิ่งหนึ่งเกิดขึ้น อีกสิ่งหนึ่งจะเกิดขึ้นหรืออาจจะเกิดขึ้น

If + present simple, future simple

ใช้พูดถึงเหตุการณ์เฉพาะซึ่งอาจเป็นไปได้ หรือผู้พูดคิดว่าจะเกิดขึ้น เช่น

If it rains, I won't go to the park. ถ้าฝนตก ฉันจะไม่ไปสวนสาธารณะ

If I study today, I'll go to the party tonight. ถ้าวันนี้ฉันอ่านหนังสือ คืนนี้จะไปปาร์ตี้

If I have enough money, I'll buy some new shoes. ถ้ามีเงินพอ ฉันจะซื้อรองเท้าใหม่

She'll be late if the train is delayed. เธอจะไปสายถ้ารถไฟมาซ้า

She'll miss the bus if she doesn't leave soon. เธอจะไม่ทันรถเมล์ถ้าไม่ออกจากบ้านตอนนี้ If I see her, I'll tell her. ถ้าพบเขาฉันจะบอกเขา

3. SECOND Conditional Sentences

วิธีใช้ : ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ตรงข้ามความจริงในปัจจุบัน หรือ อนาคต

if + past simple, ...would + infinitive

(อนุประโยคที่ต่อหลัง if ถ้าคำกิริยาเป็น verb to be จะใช้ were ได้กับประธานทุกตัว เช่น If I were you... ถ้าฉันเป็นเธอ... แต่จะใช้ was ตรงตามประธานก็ได้)

- ใช้พูดถึงความใฝ่ฝันว่าอยากให้เกิดขึ้นในอนาคตแต่อาจไม่เกิดขึ้นก็ได้ เช่น

If I won the lottery, I would buy a big house. ถ้าถูกล็อตเตอรี่จะซื้อบ้านหลังใหญ่

If I met the Queen of England, I would say hello. ถ้าได้พบราชีนีอังกฤษฉันจะกล่าวสวัสดี

She would travel all over the world if she were rich. เขาจะเที่ยวรอบโลกถ้ามีเงินมากShe would pass the exam if she ever studied. เธอคงจะสอบผ่านหรอกถ้าเธอได้เคยอ่านหนังสือ

- ใช้พูดถึงเหตุการณ์ในปัจจุบันที่เป็นไปไม่ได้เลย ไม่จริงเลย เช่น
If I had his number, I would call him. ถ้ามีเบอร์เขาฉันจะโทรหาเขา
If I were you, I wouldn't go out with that man. ถ้าฉันเป็นเธอฉันจะไม่ไปเที่ยวกับเขา

*ประโยค second conditional ต่างกับ first conditional ตรงที่แบบนี้มีความเป็นไปได้น้อยมาก

4. THIRD Conditional Sentences

วิธีใช้ : ใช้กับเหตุการณ์ที่ตรงข้ามความจริงในอดีต

If + past perfect, would have + V3

ประโยคแบบนี้ใช้พูดเกี่ยวกับอดีตที่ไม่ได้เกิดขึ้นจริงว่าถ้าเกิดขึ้นแล้วจะเป็นอย่างไร

If she had studied, she would have passed the exam.

ถ้าเขาอ่านหนังสือ เขาคงสอบผ่านไปแล้ว

If I hadn't eaten so much, I wouldn't have felt sick. ถ้ากินไม่มากฉันคงไม่ป่วย

If we had taken a taxi, we wouldn't have missed the plane. ถ้าเราขึ้นแท็กซึ่มาเราคงไม่ตกเครื่องบิน

She wouldn't have been tired if she had gone to bed earlier. เธอจะไม่เพลียถ้าเข้านอนเร็วกว่านี้

She would have become a teacher if she had gone to university. เธอคงจะเป็นครูถ้าเธอเข้าเรียนในมหาวิทยาลัย

He would have been on time for the interview if he had left the house at nine. เขาคงมาสัมภาษณ์ทันเวลาถ้าออกจากบ้านตอนเก้าโมง

5. MIXED Conditional Sentences

เป็นการนำ conditional sentences สองแบบมาผสมกัน โดยมากใช้เวลาพูดถึงสิ่งที่ไม่เป็น ความจริงในอดีตที่มีความสัมพันธ์กับปัจจุบัน เช่น

She would be a rich widow now if she'd married him. เธอคงจะได้เป็นแม่หม้ายเศรษฐีไปแล้วถ้าเธอแต่งงานกับเขา

If I'd studied law, I'd be an attorney now. ถ้าตอนนั้นเรียนนิติตอนนี้ฉันก็คงจะเป็นทนายความแล้ว

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Subjunctive คือ การใช้กริยาช่องที่ 1 ที่ไม่มี to นำหน้า และไม่มีการเติม s ไม่ว่าประธาน จะเป็นเอกพจน์ หรือ พหูพจน์ และไม่ว่ากริยาตัวหน้าจะอยู่ใน Tense ใดก็ตาม (V. to be ให้ใช้ be ตลอดไป)

การใช้ Present Subjunctive

1. อยู่หลัง "<u>กริยา + that</u>" ต่อไปนี้

S. + V. + that + S. + V1

ask that	ขอร้องว่า	suggest that	แนะนำว่า
urge that	เตือนว่า	require that	กำหนดว่า
order that	สั่งว่า	request that	ขอร้องว่า
prefer that	เห็นสมควรว่า	demand that	ต้องการว่า
insist that	ยืนกรานว่า	propose that	เสนอว่า
advise that	แนะนำว่า	recommend that	แนะนำว่า
move that	เสนอว่า	desire that	ปรารถนาว่า
stipulate that	ระบุว่า		

เช่น - I ask that I be allowed to see the Prime Minister.

- The hostess **urged that** we all **stay** for dinner.

2. อยู่หลัง # <u>It is (was) + adj. (บางคำ) + that</u>

advisable	ควรแนะนำ	important	สำคัญ
desirable	พึ่งปรารถนา	essential	จำเป็น
necessary	จำเป็น	preferable	ดีกว่า
imperative	จำเป็น, เลี่ยงไม่ได้	vital	สำคัญ
urgent	รีบด่วน	strange	แปลก
proper	เหมาะสม		

เช่น - It's important that she be brave.

- It is necessary that he go home at once.
- * เราอาจใช้ to-infinitive มาแทน Present Subjunctive ก็ได้

It is (was) + adj. + for someone + to + V1

เช่น - It's important for her to be brave.

- It is necessary for him to go home at once.

Past Subjunctive คือ การใช้กริยาช่องที่ 2 กับประโยคที่ไปเรียงตามหลังกลุ่มคำ หรือ หลังข้อความ ต่อไปนี้

# <u>lt's time + S. + V2</u>	ถึงเวลาแล้วที่
# <u>It's high time + S. + V2</u>	ถึงเวลาพอดีแล้วที่
# It's high noon + S. + V2	ถึงกำหนดเต็มที่แล้วที่
# <u>S. + would rather + S. + V2</u>	อยากจะให้
1	

เช่น - It's time the children went to bed.

- I would rather you went to the party.

* เราอาจใช้ to-infinitive มาแทน Past Subjunctive ก็ได้

It is time + for someone + to + V1

เช่น - It is time for the children to go to bed.

การใช้ Subjunctive ตามหลัง Wish Form

1. ปรารถนาอยากให้เป็นไปใน<u>ปัจจุบัน</u> ใช้ <u>wish + Past Simple</u> (V.to be ใช้ were)

เช่น - I wish I **met** her today.

- He wishes he **were** a policeman now.

2. ปรารถนาอยากให้เป็นไปใน<u>อดีต</u> ใช้ wish + Past Perfect

งื่น - I wish she **had not come** to the party.

3. ปรารถนาอยากให้เป็นไปใน<u>อนาคต</u> ใช้ <u>wish + would + V1</u>

เช่น - I wish he **would come** next week.

**นอกจาก Wish Form แล้ว ยังมีคำอื่นๆ ที่ทำให้กริยาที่ตามหลังต้องใช้ Subjunctive ในรูปต่างๆ คือ as if / as though (ราวกับว่า, ประหนึ่งว่า), if only (ถ้าหากว่า)

การใช้ as if / as though

1. # present simple (V1) + as if + past simple (V2 - V.to be ใช้ were)

เช่น - She acts as if she **knew** it well.

2. # past simple (V2) + as if + past perfect (had + V3)

เช่น - He talked as if it **had rained** very hard yesterday.

<u>การใช้ if only</u>

- ** if only = I wish
- 1. # If only + could / would + V1 (ใช้แสดงความปรารถนาตรงข้ามกับความจริงในอนาคต) เช่น
 - If only she could type faster. = I wish she could type faster.
- 2. # If only + V2 (ใช้แสดงความปรารถนาตรงข้ามกับความจริงในปัจจุบัน) เช่น
 - If only I knew what she wanted. = I wish I knew what she wanted.
- 3. # If only + had + V3 (ใช้แสดงความปรารถนาตรงข้ามกับความจริงในอดีต) เช่น
 - If only she had studied harder. = I wish she had studied harder.

** <u>if only = if</u> มักใช้กับ past tense หรือ past perfect เป็นการแสดงให้เห็นถึงความปรารถนาอย่างแรงกล้า เช่น If only I had more money, I could buy some new clothes.

If only you hadn't told Jill, everything would have been all right.

จะเห็นได้ว่า tense ของ If only จะเหมือนกับ If clause ทั่วๆไป

Exercises

Wishes / Conditional Sentences / Subjunctive

Complete the following sentences.

1. Don't they wish they	us longer holidays this summer? (give)
2. They wish now that they	English instead of when they
were in school. (study)	
3. I am sorry I forgot to invite yo	ou to my anniversary. I wish I
to send you the invitation ca	ard. (remember)
4. He	the president if only he had been a qualified man.
(make)	
5. Do you wish you	during some time in the past? (live)
6it le	ess expensive, we would buy it. (be)
7. I wish last night's program	more exciting. (be)
8. I can't speak English fluently	, but I wish I soon. (can)
9. If it hadn't rained all the time	e, he might his visited. (enjoy)
10. Jane was never absent unle	ess sheill. (be)
11. I wished our team	(win)
12 aı	n emergency arise, dial 191.
13 it not	so late, she would telephone me. (be)
14. I can't go to the party unles	s I (invite)
15. Had it not been hot, I	the window. (close)
16. Had I known what was going	g to happen, I
her alone (never leave)	

17. Supposing everybody rejected your proposal, what?			
(you do)			
18. You can wait here if you (like)			
19. Is it necessary that he in hospital for two weeks? (stay)			
20. I demand that she to see a doctor at once. (go)			
21. It's time my father (retire)			
22. It was essential that she to do that yesterday. (decide)			
23. She demanded that we more if we want to enter the			
competition. (practice)			
24. He talks as if he a doctor, but in fact he isn't. (be)			
25. It looked as though it hard. (rain)			
26. He advised that we at the air terminal at 4 o'clock. (be)			
27. It is necessary that one the instruction before taking it.			
(read)			
28. He would rather his friends here. (come)			
29. Our mother suggests that welazy. (not be)			
30. It is time for us to work. (begin)			

INVERSION OF VERB AND ADVERB

Inversion เป็นการกลับคำกริยา หรือ คำกริยาวิเศษณ์ (adverb) ขึ้นไปไว้หน้าประธาน เพื่อถาม หรือ เพื่อเน้นความ มีวิธีใช้ดังต่อไปนี้

1. ถ้ามี adverb หรือสำนวนที่มีความหมายในเชิงปฏิเสธต่อไปนี้ นำหน้าประโยค ประธานจะสลับที่ กับกริยา

Adverb + กริยาช่วย + ประธาน + กริยาแท้

barely	never before	at no time	
hardly	never in my life	in no way	
rarely	no longer	by no means	
scarcely	no sooner	nowhere (else) in the world	
seldom	not even once	only by chance	
only	not more than once	only by luck	
never	not often	only by hard work and honesty	
nowhere (else)	not once	only once in one's life	
nor (and_not)	not only	on no account	
little	not until	under no circumstances	

เช่น - Seldom do we go to school late. (= We seldom go to school late.)

- No sooner had the doctor arrived than the man died.
 - (= The doctor had no sooner arrived than the man died.)
- 2. ประธานที่นำหน้าด้วยบุพบทวลีที่เกี่ยวกับสถานที่ และ verb ของประโยคเป็น verb ที่ไม่ต้องมีกรรม มารองรับ ประธานจะสลับกับกริยา

คำบอกสถานที่ + กริยาแท้ + ประธาน

เช่น - On the corner stood a policeman. (= A policeman stood on the corner.)

3. ประโยคที่แสดงความขัดแย้ง โดยมีคำสันธานเป็น as / however = although เราจะกลับเอาคำ adj. หรือ adv. ไว้หน้าประโยค

เช่น - Much as I like him, I won't go anywhere with him.

(= Although I like him much, I won't go anywhere with him.)

- However sad she feels, she never cries.
- (= Although she feels sad, she never cries.)

- 4. # So + adj./adv. + กริยาช่วย + ประธาน + กริยาแท้ + that + S. + V.
 # Such (a) + adj. + Noun + กริยาช่วย + กริยาแท้ + that + S. + V.
 - เช่น So quickly did he run that the police lost him. (= He ran so quickly that the police lost him.)
 - Such a powerful man was he that no one dared to oppose him. (= He was such a powerful man that no one dared to oppose him.)
- 5. การกล่าวเสริม หรือ แสดงความเห็นด้วยกับความข้างหน้า
 - She can swim. **So can I.** (= She can swim. **I can too.**)
 - She can't swim. Nor/Neither can I. (= She can't swim. I can't either.)
- 6. ใช้ inversion ในประโยคเงื่อนไข ส่วนของ if-clause
 - Should you be late once again, you'll lose your job.
 - (= If you are late once again, you'll lose your job.)
- 7. ใช้ inversion ในประโยคอุทานที่ขึ้นต้นด้วย There และ Here
 - There comes the teacher! (= The teacher comes there.)

Word Order & Inversion

Types of Sentences

1. Simple Sentences

Pattern: Subject + Verb + (Object/ Others) = SV(O)

Subject (noun)	Verb (tense)	Object (noun)/ Others
		(complement/adverbials)
e.g. The fat boy over there	is	my friend.

2. Compound Sentences

Pattern: SV(O) + Coordinate Conjunction + SV(O)

Subject	Verb	Object	Coordinate Conjunction	Subject	Verb
e.g. He	is called	Peter	and	he	is smiling.

Note

- An intransitive verb does not need an object.
- A compound sentence consists of two or more simple sentences, which are combined by means of coordinate conjunctions (and, but, or, either or, neither nor).

3. Complex Sentences

Pattern: SV(O) + <u>Subordinate Conjunction</u> + SV(O)

Subject	Verb	Object/Others	Subordinate	Subject	Verb	Object/Others
			Conjunction			
e.g. Peter	likes	to sing	when	he	feels	free.

Note - A complex sentence consists of a principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses, which are combined by means of subordinate conjunctions.

- Subordinate clauses include noun clauses, adjective (relative) clauses and adverb clauses.
- Subordinate conjunctions: e.g. when, while, before, after, until, because, since, as, although, if, so that, that, who, which

4. Multiple Sentences (Compound - Complex Sentences)

Pattern: SV(O) + <u>Subordinate Conjunction</u> + SV(O) + <u>Coordinate Conjunction</u> + SV(O)

Subject	Verb	Object/ Others	Subordinate/Coordinate
			Conjunction
Peter	likes	to sing	when
he	feels	free	but
he	does not sing	very well.	

Note - A multiple sentence is a combination of compound and complex sentences.

Inversion

Inversion means the verb is placed before the subject for emphasis. It occurs:

A. in questions.

e.g. <u>Are you</u> hungry?

What <u>have you</u> done to solve the problem?

Note: No inversion when the question word is the subject.

e.g. Who invented the computer?

- B. in question tags.
 - e.g. He loves her very much, <u>doesn't he</u>?

They cried, didn't they?

- C. after "so, neither/nor, as".
 - e.g. He is polite and <u>so is his brother</u>.

Ann was not at home and neither/nor was Ben.

His colleagues respected him, as did his boss.

- D. in exclamation.
 - e.g. Here <u>comes my aunt!</u>

There goes the taxi!

Note: No inversion when the subject is a pronoun.

e.g. Here he comes!

- E. after adverbs of place/direction.
 - e.g. On top of the mountain lies a farm.

Away ran the thief!

- F. after verbs of reporting.
 - e.g. "Can you find it?" <u>asked David</u>.

"I have never seen it," said Helen.

- G. in "there be" structure.
 - e.g. There <u>were three students</u> in the classroom.

 There <u>must be some misunderstanding</u>.
- H. in emphatic sentences with a <u>negative</u> word or idea.
 - e.g. 1. <u>Never have I</u> heard such a strange story.
 - = I have never heard such a strange story.
 - 2. <u>Seldom do they</u> visit us.
 - = They seldom visit us.
 - 3. <u>Little did she</u> suspect that she was cheated.
 - = She little suspected that she was cheated.
 - 4. Rarely have we watched such a moving film.
 - = We have rarely watched such a moving film.
 - 5. <u>Not until Monday did he</u> return the camera to me.
 - = He did not return the camera to me until Monday.
 - 6. Nowhere can you buy such cheap jeans.
 - = You cannot buy such cheap jeans at anywhere.
 - 7. No sooner had he arrived than he called us.
 - = As soon as he had arrived, he called us.
 - 8. <u>Hardly/Scarcely had he</u> returned from the journey <u>when</u> he fell ill.
 - = As soon as he had returned from the journey, he fell ill.
 - 9. <u>Under no circumstances will I</u> give way to his demands.
 - = I will not give way to his demands under any circumstances.
 - 10. In no way can they help you.
 - = They cannot help you in any way.
 - 11. At no time was I aware of what was happening.
 - = I was at no time aware of what was happening.
 - 12. On no account will she forgive him.
 - = She will not forgive him on any account.
- I. in adverbial expressions placed at the beginning.
 - e.g. 1. Often have I heard that corruption doesn't pay.
 - = I have often heard that corruption doesn't pay.
 - 2. <u>Twice has he</u> been warned to keep away from drugs.
 - = He has been warned twice to keep away from drugs.

- 3. <u>So desperate was their situation</u> that they decided to sell their house.
 - = Their situation was so desperate that they decided to sell their house.
- 4. Only after a hot debate did they agree to compromise.
 - = They agreed to compromise only after a hot debate.
- 5. Not only was he the producer but he was also the director of the film.
 - = He was not only the producer but also the director of the film.

*Note: Inversion also occurs in other expressions like:

Only afterwards / later / yesterday / last week/..., Only if, Only when, Only after, Not since $\,$

- J. with "Should, Were, Had" in conditionals when "If" is omitted.
 - Type 1: Should you see him, tell him to call me.
 - = If you should see him, tell him to call me.
 - Type 2: Were I you, I would cancel my appointment.
 - = If I were you, I would cancel my appointment.
 - Type 3: <u>Had he</u> known, he would have solved the problem.
 - = If he had known, he would have solved the problem.

Exercises

Inversion of Verb and Anverb

Choose the best answer.

1.	So badly in the accident	that he was admitted in hospital.
	1. he was injured	2. did he injure
	3. was he injured	4. were he injured
2.	Scarcely his election addre	ess when the assassins shot him down
	1. has he finished	2. was finished by him
	3. he had finished	4. had he finished
3.	Mary has never been to Spain, and	
	1. so have I	2. neither I have
	3. nor have I	4. neither haven't I
4.	earlier, he could have	more time to have breakfast.
	1. Were he to come	2. Did he come
	3. Come he to be	4. He were to come
5.	it that he was awa	rded a prize.
	1. So he did well do	2. So well did he do
	3. Did he do so well	4. Well so did he do
6.	with whom we are	familiar.
	1. Here the scientists come	2. Come the scientists here
	3. The scientists here come	4. Here come the scientists
7.	than the troubl	e began.
	1. Had he no sooner arrived	2. Had arrived he no sooner
	3. No sooner he had arrived	4. No sooner had he arrived
8.	happened before.	
	1. Never has such a thing	2. Has never such a thing
	3. Such never has a thing	4. A thing has never such
9.	On the stairs	
	1. was sitting a thin-faced girl	2. was a thin-faced girl sitting
	3. a thin-faced girl was sitting	4. sitting a thin-faced girl

- 10. At no time what was happening.
 - 1. the President was aware of 2. the President did aware of
 - 3. did the President aware of 4. was the President aware of

Look at the sentences which all use inversion. Which sentences are correct?

- 1. How wonderful that movie was!
- 2. Only after posting the postcard did I remember I hadn't put a stamp on it.
- 3. Rarely Veronica forgets to take her key.
- 4. Under no circumstances you should reply to that letter.
- 5. What a lovely meal was that!
- 6. Only when you have your own children you will understand how difficult it is.
- 7. Never I have seen so much snow in November!
- 8. Only Phil saw the thief coming through the window.
- 9. What worries me most is the sheer expense of the vacation.
- 10. What I'm going to do, ask for another bill.

Word Order & Inversion

Exercise A

<u> </u>			
Identify the sentences with the following letters: S: Simple Sente	ence;		
Cp: Compound Sentence; Cx: Complex Sentence; M: Multiple Se	ntence	<u> </u>	
l: Inversion			
e.g. There is a beautiful young girl dancing wonderfully in the room ne	xt to th	e gym. (S)
1. He said that the test was on Friday.	()	
2. Simon found his missing wallet by looking under his bed.	()	
3. When I met John, we talked for a while and we both missed our goo	d old c	lays. (,
4. Rarely does Betty take anyone's advice.	()	
5. My friend works for a company that designs web sites.	()	
6. The van which the thief had stolen was found in Shek Yam.	()	
7. Peter slept well but Paul didn't.	()	
8. Mr. Lee turned off the TV in order to focus on his work.	()	
9. The more I know the children, the better I like them.	()	
10. The water was so cold that we decided not to swim.	()	
Exercise B			

Match the following sentences and choose correct conjunctions for them: although, after, which, seldom, because, later than, when, that, if, as, so that

Part I	Part II
e.g. Peter took a day off	()I bought last week.
1. They arrived	() he were me.
2. I will cook	()I can't work.
3. He was taking a bath	(e.g.) <u>because</u> he had a cold yesterday.
4. I helped him	() such a difficult exercise.
5. There is such a lot of noise	() we are good friends.
6. We don't meet very often	()she will tell everybody.
7. I will wear my new shoes,	() we expected.
8. He said that he would apologize	()he could finish early.
9. Don't tell Sophie your secret	() I tidy the house.
10 have I done	() the phone rang.

Exercise C

Rearrange the word order of the following statements to make correct sentences.

e.g. was sailing/ In 1894/ the Atlantic Ocean/ a steamship/ from/ England to America/ across/. In 1894 a steamship was sailing across the Atlantic Ocean from England to America. 1. was shining/gentle breezes/ The sun/ and/ were blowing/. 2. was sailing/three weeks/ The ship/for/. 3. was/ New York/ halfway to/It / its destination/-/. 4. were relaxing/ when/ on deck/ The passengers/ a loud bang/suddenly/ heard/ they/. 5. looked over/all/the edge/ They/ ran to/ of the boat/ and/ jumped up/ the side/, /. 6. a terrible scene/ saw/To their horror/ they/. 7. which/ They/ in the side of/ some hard object/ had hit/ had torn/ a hole/ the ship/. 8. the steamship/ was pouring/ at an alarming speed/ into/ Water/. 9. half an hour/arrived/Fortunately/another ship/later/. 10. everyone/ It/ just in time/ to save/ on board/ was/.

Exercise D

Some words are in wrong order in each sentence. Underline the mistakes and correct them.

e.g.	You aren't telling the truth, <u>you are</u> ?	are you
	1. She asked me what was my decision.	
	2. Only by constant practice we can improve our l	English.
	3. Here our guests come!	
	4. Often we have heard that smoking is hazardous	to health.
	5. Under no circumstances you should do it.	
	6. I had been there, I would have scolded him for	his dirty trick.
	7. Only if you invite her, she will come to your pa	rty.
	8. Jane hasn't returned our calls and neither Lily h	nas.
	O Havelly Hard amissad bases sub on it bases to rein	
	9. Hardly I had arrived home when it began to rair	1.
	10. On no account you should be absent	
	10. On no account you should be absent.	
	•••••	

Exercise E

Rewrite the following sentences using the words given, without changing the meaning.

e.g. As soon as she entered the room, they stopped gossiping.

No sooner had she entered the room than they stopped gossiping.

1.	I have never met such a ridiculous man!
	Never
2.	Seldom have I seen a better football player.
3.	She found a job only last week.
	Only last week
4.	Not only is she beautiful, but she is also rich.
	She is
5.	Not until Mr. Chan is here will we begin our lunch meeting.
	We will not
6.	We will pay you only after you finish the job.
	Only after
7.	Only if you study hard will you pass the exam.
	You will
8.	We had such a warm winter only once before.
	Only once before
9.	I would not buy those pirated CDs under any circumstances.
	Under no circumstances
	10. The bird flew out when I opened the cage door.
	Out

MODAL VERBS

Modal verbs เป็นกริยาช่วยซึ่งนำมาใช้ร่วมกับคำกริยาหลัก และต้องคำนึงถึงสถานการณ์ด้วย เพราะ คำกริยาเหล่านี้จะมีความหมายตามแต่สถานการณ์ที่ใช้

Can / Could

Can แปลว่า สามารถ มีความหมายเหมือนกับ 'to be able to' และอาจใช้แทนกันได้ -I can speak French. หรือ I am able to speak French.

ข้อควรจำ

- 1. Can ไม่มีรูปเป็น Perfectหรือ Future Simple Tense ดังนั้นถ้าจะใช้ canในรูป Tense ดังกล่าวจะต้อง เปลี่ยนมาใช้รูป 'to be able to'
- 2. ใน Past Simple Tense นิยมใช้ to be able to' แทน could เพราะ I could อาจมีความหมาย เป็น Present หรือ Future ก็ได้
- 3. แม้ can ไม่มีรูป Future ก็ตาม แต่สามารถใช้ ในความหมายที่เป็น Future ได้ โดยมากมักมี Adverb of Time กำกับไว้ด้วย

วิธีการใช้ Can

- 1. ใช้แสดง "ความสามารถ" (Ability) หรืออาจจะใช้ในรูปปฏิเสธ
 - I can drive a car.
 - She can type 60 words per minutes.
 - I can't drive a car.
 - She can't type 60 words per minutes.
- 2. ใช้แสดง "การขออนุญาต" และ "การอนุญาต" (Permission)
 - Can I enter the room?
 - Yes, you can.
- 3. ใช้แสดง "การคาดคะเน" ซึ่งอาจจะเป็นไปได้ (Possibility)
 - She can finish her work by tomorrow.

วิธีการใช้ Could

- 1. ใช้เป็น Past Tense ของ can
 - When I was young, I could run fast.
 - I couldn't understand your yesterday explanation.
- 2. Could ใช้เป็นคำขอร้องที่สุภาพ ซึ่งมีความหมายเป็น Present Simple
 - Could I borrow your pen?
 - Could you tell me the time to go?

May / Might

วิธีการใช้ May

- 1. ใช้แสดงความปรารถนา หรือเป็นการอวยพร
 - May god bless you.
 - May your dream be true.
- 2. ใช้เป็นคำขออนุญาตที่สุภาพ
 - May I open the window?
 - May I go out, sir?
- 3. ใช้เป็นคำอนุญาต
 - You may have what you want.
 - You may go out now.
- 4. ใช้แสดงข้อความที่อาจเป็นไปได้เป็นการคาดคะเน
 - Your wishes may come true.
 - They may receive our news in a day or two.

วิธีการใช้ Might

- 1. ใช้เป็น past ของ may
 - He asked me that he might find the truth.
 - He said that he might come.
- 2. ใช้ในความหมายที่เป็น present tense เมื่อ
 - 2.1 ต้องการแสดงความสุภาพ เช่น
 - Might I open the window?
 - 2.2 ต้องการแสดงข้อความที่อาจจะเกิดขึ้นได้ในอนาคต (แต่โอกาสเกิดขึ้นน้อยกว่าการใช้ may)
 - Your dream may be true.
 - Your dream might be true.

Shall / Should

Shall ใช้ในการให้ความช่วยเหลือ หรือ การเสนอแนะ ชี้แนะ เช่น

- Shall I help you with your luggage?

Should แปลว่า "ควร" ใช้ได้กับประธานทุกตัว มีความหมายเป็น Present Tense ใช้เป็น คำแนะนำว่า ควรทำหรือไม่ควรทำ

- You should ask your teacher if you don't understand.
- You should be more careful about what I advise.
- You should not do like that.

should (รูป past tense ของ shall) ใช้ในประโยค

a. Indirect Speech

Direct Speech - He said to me, "You will go home".

Indirect Speech - He told me that I should go home.

- b. If-Clause
 - If I came here in time, I should meet you.
 - If I were you, I should not do that silly thing.

Ought to

การใช้ Ought to ซึ่งแปลว่า "ควรทำ" เพราะเป็นหน้าที่ และเป็นการแสดงว่า "ควรจะเป็น" เช่นนั้นจริงๆ เช่น

- You are a student, you ought to behave politely.
- Work hard and you ought to obey your teacher.
- We have been studying English for many years, we ought to be ableto speak it fluently.

Have to, Must

Has to, Have to มีความหมายว่า "จำเป็นต้องทำ" ใช้เมื่อมีเหตุการณ์ภายนอกบังคับให้เราต้องทำ เช่น

- I have to go now because the train will leave at six.

- We have to do our work neatly or we shall not get good marks.

Must ใช้ได้กับประธานทุกตัว มีความหมายว่า "ต้อง" โดยทั่วไปใช้เมื่อเป็นคำสั่งให้กระทำ หรือใช้เมื่อมี เหตุการณ์ภายในตัวเรา บังคับให้เราต้องทำ และแสดงการคาดคะเน โดยมีความมั่นใจว่า จะต้องเกิดการ กระทำหรือเหตุการณ์นั้นๆ เมื่อจะใช้ must ใน Tense อื่น ต้องใช้ have to แทน

- We must leave soon.
- They will have to return home before sunset.
- I must go to see the doctor because I feel unwell.
- You must have some coffee because you look sleepy.
- If you don't tell him, he must get lost.

Need

Need เป็นได้ทั้ง กริยาหลัก (main verb) และ กริยาช่วย (modal verb) การใช้ need

1. ใช้ need อย่างกริยาหลัก ในประโยค

need + คำนาม = ต้องการอย่างมากหรือจำเป็น เช่น

- I need a toilet!! I can't hold it anymore

need + to + V1 (need to do something) = ต้องการหรือจำเป็นต้องทำอะไร เช่น

- You need to attend to meeting.
- ** ข้อควรระวัง ถ้าใช้ need อย่าง main verb เวลาทำเป็นรูปปฏิเสธหรือคำถาม ต้องใช้ verb to do เข้ามาช่วย เช่น
 - You don't need to go there.
 - 2. ใช้ need อย่างกริยาช่วยหรือ modal verb need + V1 = ต้องการหรือจำเป็นต้องทำอะไร เช่น
 - You need sleep.
- * ถ้าใช้อย่างกริยาช่วยไม่จำเป็นต้องเอา verb to do เข้ามาช่วยค่ะ เติม not หลัง need ได้เลย และ เวลาตั้งคำถาม ก็สามารถใช้ need ขึ้นต้นประโยค เช่น
 - She need not buy a car.
 - Need you stay up tonight?
 - 3. การใช้ need อีกแบบคือ ใช้ในโครงสร้าง

need + V.ing (need doing something) แปลว่า จำเป็นต้องได้รับการทำอะไร เป็น โครงสร้างถูกกระทำ กรณีที่ประธานของประโยคไม่ได้ทำเอง เช่น

- Your room needs cleaning.
- Does the engine need checking?

**ถ้าใช้ Modal verbs ต่อด้วย "have" แล้วต่อด้วย Past participle (คือ คำกริยาช่อง 3) จะเป็น การพูดถึงเหตุการณ์ในอดีต

should / ought to + have + Past participle

มีความหมายว่า ไม่ควรจะกระทำสิ่งหนึ่งสิ่งใดในอดีต แต่ได้กระทำไปแล้ว เช่น

- The party was boring. I shouldn't have gone there.
- They oughtn't to have been absent from school yesterday.
- We should have waited for the rain to stop.

must + have + Past participle

มีความหมาย แสดงการคาดคะเน เหตุการณ์ที่ค่อนข้างจะมั่นใจว่าได้ปรากฏขึ้นในอดีต

- Suda's light is out. She must have gone to sleep.
- Somsak got A in every subject. He must have studied very hard.
- I can't find my bag. It must have been stolen when I was on the bus.

would + have + Past participle

ใช้เมื่อพูดถึงเหตุการณ์ที่ในอดีตที่คาดว่าจะเป็นอย่างนั้น

- I would have been happy to see him, but I didn't have time.
- My grandmother wouldn't have approved of the exhibition.

will + have + Past participle

ใช้เมื่อพูดถึงเหตุการณ์ที่ในอดีตที่คาดว่าจะเป็นอย่างนั้น (ถ้าใช้ "will" จะแน่ใจกว่า "would" แต่ก็ไม่ ถึงกับ "must")

- As you will have noticed, he's got new glasses.
- Most people won't have seen last night's lunar eclipse.

might / may + have + Past participle

หมายถึง การคาดคะเนเหตุการณ์ที่ค่อนข้างจะไม่มั่นใจว่าได้ปรากฏ ขึ้นในอดีตหรือไม่

- My sister might have eaten my pizza.

could + have + Past participle

- ใช้เมื่อคิดว่าเหตุการณ์ในอดีตอาจจะเป็นอย่างนั้นก็ได้
 - I have lost my bicycle. My neighbor could have stolen my bicycle.
- ใช้แสดงความสามารถที่ไม่ได้ถูกนำออกมาใช้คือ ไม่ได้กระทำ นั่นเอง
 - -They could have started working two hours ago.
 - I could have finished it last year.

needn't + have + Past participle

ใช้เมื่อพูดถึงเหตุการณ์ที่ในอดีตที่ ไม่จำเป็นต้องทำแต่ก็ได้ทำไปแล้ว เช่น

- They needn't have done that.

Had better / Would rather

had better + V1 มีความหมายว่า....ควรจะ.....ดีกว่า would rather + V1 มีความหมายว่า....ชอบ.....มากกว่า ** ทั้งสองคำนี้มาคู่กับเสมอ **

-77had better = should = ought to = ควรจะ

1.	I think I had better show this to you now.	ฉันคิดว่าฉันควรแสดงให้คุณดูตอนนี้
2.	You had better go tomorrow.	คุณควรจะไปพรุ่งนี้ดีกว่า
3.	You'd better see a doctor if you're still feeling ill tomorrow.	คุณควรจะไปพบหมอถ้าคุณยังมี อาการป่วยพรุ่งนี้
4.	You' d better not make a mistake next time.	คุณไม่ควรทำผิดในครั้งต่อไป
5.	They had better not forget their homework.	พวกเขาไม่ควรจะลืมการบ้าน
6.	We had better not go to Pattaya.	พวกเราไม่ควรจะไปพัทยา
7.	You had better study tonight.	คุณควรจะเรียนคืนนี้
8.	She had better go home early.	หล่อนควรจะกลับบ้านแต่เนิ่นๆ

Would rather = would like = prefer = ชอบ

1.	I would rather drive.	ฉันขอบขับรถมากกว่า
2.	I would rather not drive.	ฉันไม่ชอบขับรถมากกว่า
3.	I would rather that you drove.	ฉันอยากให้คุณขับรถ
4.	I would rather that you didn't drive.	ฉันไม่อยากให้คุณขับรถ
5.	I'd rather you didn't to that.	ฉันไม่อยากให้คุณทำสิ่งนั้น
6.	She told me that she'd rather not serve on the committee.	เธอบอกฉันว่าเธอไม่ชอบบริการ คณะกรรมการ
7.	If you don't mind, I'd rather not go.	ถ้าคุณไม่รังเกียจฉันก็ไม่อยากไป
8.	We 'd rather you came tomorrow.	เราชอบให้คุณมากพรุ่งนี้

^{*} ให้สังเกตุ not ไม่ได้อยู่หลัง had, would

Prefer / Would Prefer / Would rather

แปลว่า ชอบมากกว่า หรือ อยากมากกว่า

รูปแบบการใช้ Prefer

I prefer something to something else.

I prefer doing something to doing something else.

I prefer to do something rather than (do) something else.

เช่น

- I prefer this shirt to the shirt you were wearing yesterday.
- I prefer driving to traveling by train.
- I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

รูปแบบการใช้ Would prefer (I'd prefer...)

Would prefer to do / I'd prefer to do

Would prefer จะใช้ในกรณีต้องการเฉพาะเจาะจงมากกว่า Prefer เช่น

- "Would you prefer tea or coffee." "Coffee, please."
- "Shall we go by train?" "Well, I'd prefer to go by car."
- I'd prefer to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.

(จะไม่ใช้ "I'd prefer going")

รูปแบบการใช้ Would rather (I'd rather...)

Would rather (do) = would prefer (to do). หลัง would rather จะใช้ infinitive without to.

"I'd prefer to go by car."

"Shall we go by train?"

"I'd rather go by car."

ถ้าเป็นปฏิเสธ - "I'd rather not (do something)" เช่น

- I'm tired. I'd rather not go out this evening, if you don't mind

Used to และ Be / Get used to

used to + Infinitive Without "to" หรือ V.1

Used to ใช้แสดงถึงสิ่งที่เคยทำจนเป็นนิสัยในอดีต เป็นการให้ข้อมูลโดยไม่มีอารมณ์ หรือความรู้สึก แทรก ใช้กับการอธิบายถึงกิจกรรมที่คุณเคยทำในอดีต แต่ตอนนี้ไม่ทำแล้ว เช่น

- I used to play the violin last year.
- They *used to* go to the park together.
- She *used to* work as an accountant.

หลักการทำเป็นประโยคปฏิเสธ

Subject + did not (didn't) + use + to + V.1 เช่น

- He *didn't use to* eat strange food.

be / get used to + Gerund (V.ing/N.)

Be / Get used to ใช้แสดงถึงความรู้สึกของผู้พูดว่า มีความเคยชินกับสิ่งใดสิ่งหนึ่งโดยอาจจะมี ความรู้สึกเชิงบวกด้วย โดยที่สามารถเปลี่ยนเวลาเป็นปัจจุบันกาล (Present Simple Tense) หรือ อดีตกาล (Past Simple Tense) ที่ be หรือ get ได้ เช่น

- I *got used to* walking at home after school.
- He *is used to* drinking coffee a lot.
- We *are used to* shopping at that mall.

หลักการทำเป็นประโยคปฏิเสธ

Subject + V. to be (is, am, are, was, were) + not + used to + V.ing Subject + do, does + not get/did not get + used to + V.ing เช่น

- They *aren't used to* eating food with knives.
- She *doesn't get used to* sleeping in a tent.

Exercises

Modal Verbs

Choose the best answer.

1.	It's getting late. I		be on my	Wa	ay now.			
	1. can 2. will			3.	had be	etter	4.	had to
2.	He promised that he		ph	non	e me la	st night.		
	1. would	2.	should		3.	ought to	4.	will
3.	My sister's tooth still give	es h	er some pai	in. :	She	gone to	the	dentist
	yesterday.							
	1. must be			2.	would	have		
	3. should hav	/e		4.	could I	have		
4.	She ought not		him but she	e d	id.			
	1. to insult			2.	insult			
	3. to have ins	sulte	ed	4.	have ir	nsulted		
5.	That tree is killing the gra	ss;)	/ou		cut	it down.		
	1. should	2.	ought		3.	are	4.	do
6.	We as w	vell	go swimmir	ng t	his afte	rnoon.		
	1. can	2.	must		3.	shall	4.	might
7.	We must get this tap							
	1. mend	2.	mending		3.	to mend	4.	mended
8.	Helivin	g in	Bangkok an	nd s	so doesr	n't mind the noise	and	l crowded
	conditions.							
	1. used to			2.	is used	I to		
	3. was using t	0		4.	was us	ed		
9.	You had your car repaire	d la	ist week,			?		
	1. hadn't you	2.	hadn't it		3.	didn't you	4.	didn't it
10	. John asked whether he			. le	ave the	room.		
	1. may	2.	can		3.	might	4.	would
11	. You pa	y in	cash. You s	ign	your na	ame and pay later.		
	1. had better	2.	used to		3.	mustn't	4.	needn't
12	. I don't see the package.	Joh	n		it yes	sterday.		
	1. must mail			2.	should	I have mailed		
	3. must have	ma	iled	4.	needn	't have mailed		

13.	Не	to diso	bey my order	s, didn't he?	
	1. dared	2. dare r	not 3.	dares	4. dare
14.	The last exer	cise	very ea	sy for everyone in t	he class, but it wasn't.
	1.	may have been	2.	should have been	
	3.	should be	4.	must be	
15.	Dang has bee	n in the United	States for mo	re than three years	up to now.
	He	English very v	vell by this tir	me.	
	1.	must speak	2.	may speak	
	3.	must have spok	ken 4.	should have spoke	en
16.	Jack	afraid	of dogs but n	ow he likes them.	
	1.	must be	2.	could be	
	3.	may be	4.	used to be	
17.	Sorry to distu	ırb you, I	ł	nave dialed the wro	ong number.
	1. must	2. coulc	3.	may	4. had to
18.	Please have t	the boy	these	things to my house	e.
	1. bring	2. broug	ght 3.	to bring	4. bringing
19.	John	play	the piano m	uch better a few ye	ears ago.
	1. can	2. was able	e to 3.	may	4. should
20.	1	them about			have time to do that.
		may tell		may have told	
				needn't have told	
21.		•		e. Stop her if she h	as.
		might tell		must have told	
		3		should have told	
22.		me like tl			
		,		needn't have plea	
			•	didn't have to ple	ase
23.	•				
0.1	1. should			must	4. may
24.				ek. I wonder why h	e didn't.
		should watch		could watch	
0.5		could have wat		might have watche	ed
25.					
		would rather		used to	
	3.	would like	4.	is used to	

26.	. Finally he convince his boss that the plan would work.				
	1.	might	2. was able to		
	3.	ought to	4. could have		
27.	"He is not al	lowed to watch television.	" means		
	1.	he doesn't have to watch	n television.		
	2.	he needn't watch television	on.		
	3.	he shouldn't watch televi	ision.		
	4.	he mustn't watch television	on.		
28.	"It is possible	e that we will be late for so	chool." means		
	1.	we may be late for school	ol.		
	2.	we must be late for school	ol, I'm not sure.		
	3.	we may have been late fo	or school.		
	4.	we ought to be late for so	chool.		
29.	"Somsak oug	ght to have done it." mear	ns		
	1.	we think he did it.	2. we're sure he did it.		
	3.	he didn't do it.	4. we don't know whether he did it.		
30.	"They may h	nave missed the train." me	eans		
	1.	it is possible that they will	l miss it.		
	2.	they have been allowed t	to miss it.		
	3.	it is possible that they mis	ssed it.		
	4.	it was necessary that they	/ missed it.		
	******	·*************************************	**********		

QUANTIFIERS

Each boy has his own pen. เด็กแต่ละคนมีปากกาของเขาเอง Every girl is pretty. เด็กผู้หญิงทุกคนน่ารัก

One of the books is about history. หนังสือเล่มหนึ่ง (ในหลายเล่ม) เป็นเรื่องเกี่ยวกับ ประวัติศาสตร์

Neither of the boys is here. เด็กทั้งสองคนไม่ได้มาที่นี่

Some boys are interested in football. เด็กชายบางคนสนใจฟุตบอล Most books are useful. หนังสือส่วนมากมีประโยชน์

* All + the + นามพหูพจน์ + กริยาพหูพจน์ (เมื่อชี้เฉพาะ)
All + the + นามนับไม่ได้ + กริยาเอกพจน์ (เมื่อชี้เฉพาะ)
ตัวอย่าง

Some of the boys in this school are interested in football. (เฉพาะในโรงเรียนนี้) None of the books in the library are about politics. (เฉพาะในห้องสมุด)

เปรียบเทียบ some และ any

some ใช้กับประโยชน์**บอกเล่า**

any ใช้กับประโยคคำถามและ*ปฏิเสธ*

ตัวอย่าง

I haven't any lemonade but I can give you some cold milk.

I can hardly see anything without my glasses. I must get some new ones soon.

<u>โปรดระวัง</u> hardly, scarcely, never, rarely, seldom คำเหล่านี้มีความหมายเป็นปฏิเสธ ต้องใช้ any

ยกเว้น

1.) some ใช้กับประโยคคำถามที่เป็น polite request (คำขอร้องสุภาพ)

"Shall I give you some tea?" "Yes, please."

May I give you some more wine?"

Shall we visit **some** of our friends this evening?

2.) any ใช้กับประโยคบอกเล่า เมื่อต้องการความหมายว่า ก็ได้, ก็ตาม

"Goodbye, I'll see you **some** day soon." (สักวันหนึ่ง)

"Of course, **any** day next week will suit me." (วันไหนก็ได้)

His mother gives him anything he wants.

คำที่มีความหมายว่า "มากมาย"

Uncountable	Countable	Count. และ Uncount.
much a great deal (of) a large amount (of) a large quantity (of) a good deal (of)	many a large number (of)	a lot (of) / lots (of) plenty (of)

ตัวอย่าง

He owns **a large number of** cars and **a large amount** of land. (cars นับได้ แต่ land นับไม่ได้)

Mr. Jones has a great deal of money but not many friends.

Don't hurry, we've got much time.

A lot of students failed because they did not spend much time revising. ข้อสังเกต คำว่า "of" นั้นละได้เมื่อคำเหล่านี้ไม่มีคำนามมาตามข้างหลัง และทำหน้าที่เป็น adverb

"How much homework have you got?"

"I've got **a lot**, I'm afraid." (เป็น adverb ขยาย got)

Her English has improved a great deal this term. (เป็น adverb ขยาย improved)

"How many people came?" "A large number."

4. คำที่มีความหมายว่า "น้อย"

little	น้อยมาก	(not enough)	+ นามนับไม่ได้	
a little	น้อยแต่พอมี	(enough)	+ นามนบเมเต	
few	น้อยมาก	(not enough)		
a few	น้อยแต่พอมี	(enough)	+ นามนับได้พหูพจน์	

ตัวอย่าง

A little patience and a few words help more than medicine, sometimes.

= บางครั้งความอดทนสักนิดหน่อยและคำพูด 2-3 คำ ช่วยได้ดีกว่ายา

Few men can act in an emergency where there is little time for thinking.

= น้อยคนนักที่จะปฏิบัติการได้ดีในยามฉุกเฉิน ซึ่งมีเวลาคิดน้อยมาก

หมายเหตุ a few และ a little มักมีคำว่า very, too, just, only หรือ quite นำหน้า เช่น

very few / very little = น้อยมาก too few / too little = น้อยเกินไป

just a few = เพียงสองสามคน/สิ่ง, เพียงไม่กี่คน/สิ่ง

just a little = เพียงเล็กน้อย

only a few = สองสามคน/สิ่งเท่านั้น, ไม่กี่คน/สิ่งเท่านั้น

only a little = เล็กน้อยเท่านั้น

quite a few = many quite a little = much

[&]quot;Here's a little water to drink with your aspirin."

[&]quot;Thank you. I'll feel better in a few minutes.

5. Much / Very

ทั้ง much และ very เป็นกริยาวิเศษณ์ (adverbs)

1.) เรามักใช้ **much** กับ verb

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u>
Do you go out **much**คุณออกไปข้างนอกบ่อยมากหรือเปล่า
I don't like his father **much**.
ผมไม่ชอบคุณพ่อของเขาอย่างมาก

2.) very ใช้กับ adjective หรือ adverb

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u> The class was **very** quiet.

ชั้นเรียนเงียบมาก

The bus service is not **very** regular.

บริการรถประจำทางไม่สม่ำเสมอ

The teacher looked at me **very** sadly, and said that I had failed. ครูมองดูผมด้วยใบหน้าเศร้าๆแล้วบอกว่าผมสอบตก

หมายเหตุ : นอกจาก much จะใช้กับ verb แล้ว ยังใช้กับ adjective ได้ ถ้าหากเป็น comparative adjective หรือ superlative adjective เช่น much prettier, much the quietest

6. Too/ Enough

1.) Too = มากเกินไป

There is **too** much noise in this class.

ห้องเรียนนี้มีเสียงหนวกหูมากเกินไป

There are **too** many languages to enable the people to understand each other. มีภาษาต่างๆมากมายหลายภาษาเกินไปที่จะทำให้ผู้คนเข้าใจกันได้

2.) Enough = พอเพียง

There are **enough** chairs in this room.

ห้องนี้มีเก้าอี้เพียงพอ

I haven't **enough** money to live on.

ผมมีเงินไม่มากพอแก่การดำรงชีวิต

7. All / Whole

all แปลว่า **ทั้งหมด**

เราใช้ all หรือ all of (all the) เมื่อเราพูดถึงจำนวนทั้งหมดของสิ่งของ หรือ ผู้คนทั้งหมดในกลุ่ม

all + plural nouns / all + uncountable nouns

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u> All the people you invited are coming here.

ผู้คนทั้งหมดที่ถูกคุณเชิญ กำลังมาที่นี่

Sunee has spent **all the money** her mother gave her yesterday. สุนีย์ได้ใช้จ่ายเงินทั้งหมด ที่แม่ของเธอได้ให้แก่เธอเมื่อวานนี้

All of my friends live in Thailand.

เพื่อนทั้งหมดของฉัน อาศัยอยู่ที่ประเทศไทย

whole แปลว่า ทั้งหมด

เราใช้ whole (of) กับคำนามเอกพจน์ และโดยทั่วไปเรา<u>ไม่ใช้ whole กับคำนามนับไม่ได้</u>

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u> Yesterday, after the class I was so hungry. I ate **a whole packet** of biscuits.

(= a complete packet)

เมื่อวาน หลังจากเลิกเรียนแล้ว ฉันหิวจัด ฉันได้กินขนมปังกรอบหมดทั้งห่อ

Sunisa has lived her whole life in Thailand.

สุนิสาได้ใช้ชีวิตทั้งหมดของเธอ อาศัยอยู่ที่เมืองไทย

We spent the whole afternoon on the beach.

พวกเราได้ใช้เวลาตลอดช่วงบ่าย อยู่ที่ชายหาด

ความแตกต่างระหว่าง all และ whole

All น้ำหน้า definite article : All the book

Whole ตามหลัง definite article : The whole book

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u> Thanong has read **all the book**. (not just a part of a book but all)

Thanong has read the whole book. (not just a part of a book but all)

All น้ำหน้า possessive adjective : All my life

Whole ตามหลัง possessive adjective: My whole life

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u> I have been living in Thailand **all my life**.

I have been living in Thailand my whole life.

All ใช้กับคำนามพหูพจน์ และ คำนามนับไม่ได้

Whole ใช้กับคำนามเอกพจน์

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u> All dogs are animals.

Whole country mourned his death.

*** <u>หมายเหต</u> ***

้ เราสามารถใช้ทั้ง all และ whole กับคำนามพหูพจน์ แต่จะให้ความหมายที่แตกต่างกัน ลองเปรียบเทียบประโยคตัวอย่างข้างล่าง

ตัวอย่าง

All of the towns had their electricity cut off. (=every town in an area) ทุกๆเมืองที่ตั้งอยู่ในพื้นที่

After the storm, whole towns were left without electricity.

(= some towns completely affected) บางเมืองไฟฟ้าดับทั้งหมด แต่บางเมืองไฟฟ้าดับเป็นบางส่วน

8. Almost, Nearly เกือบจะ

1.) Almost + all + of + นามพหูพจน์ + กริยาพหูพจน์
Almost + all + of + นามนับไม่ได้ + กริยาเอกพจน์

<u>ตัวอย่าง</u>

Almost all of the chairs in this room are broken.

Almost all of the water in this jug is pure.

2.) Almost + every + นามนับได้เอกพจน์ + กริยาเอกพจน์ ตัวอย่าง

Almost every girl is responsible.

We see accidents in Bangkok almost every day.

3.) Almost + verb (ทำหน้าที่เป็น adverb)

ตัวอย่าง

Preecha got grade 1 in English, he almost failed.

หมายเหตุ nearly ใช้แทน almost ได้ทุกกรณี

Exercises

Choose the best answer. 1. A: Have you got any tea?

1.	A: Have you got any	tea?		
	B:, but only	' a		
	1. No / few	2. No / little	3. Yes / few	4. Yes / little
2.	A: Are these the cup	s she wants?		
	B: Yes, those are	she want	S.	
	1. ones	2. the one	3. one	4. the ones
3.	The teacher gave	student a	book.	
	1. each	2. each of	3. each of the	4. each the
4.	A: Has there been	news fr	om him?	
	B: Yes,			
	1. much /	a little	2. much / a few	
	3. many /	little	4. many / few	
5.	There is	who can help you	more than your moth	er.
	1. none	2. no one	3. nothing	4. no
6.	Main Street	three miles lo	ong.	
	1. has nearly	2. is nearly	3. all most is	4. is near
7.	A: I want to cash this	s check.		
	B: I'm sorry, but we	can't cash it.		
	A: Why?			
	B: Tomorrow is a ho	liday, so there	we can do u	ntil Thursday.
	1. is some	thing	2. has nothing	
	3. is nothi	ng	4. has not anythir	ng
8.	A: What the quickest	way to learn English?		
	B: There is no quick	way. You just have to	practice	, that's all.
	1. much	2. a lot	3. a lot of	4. great deal
9.	There wasn't	news in the r	newspaper this morning	g.
	1. a lot	2. hardly any	3. very few	4. much
10	. A: How did she lead	rn to sew so well?		
	B: She said that the	e only thing it takes is	pati	ence.
	1. a great	deal of	2. so much	
	3. lot of		4. a great deal	

11.	There is	hope that th	ne child will live, I'm afra	nid.
	1. few	2. a little	3. little	4. the little
12.		people can amuse the	mselves for long.	
	1. 9	Such few	2. So few of	
	3. \	/ery few	4. Only few	
13.	I don't have .	difficult with scien	nce, but I have t	rouble with English.
	1. 9	so much / a lot	2. much / a lot	of
	3. \	very much / so much of	4. very / much	
14.	ir	n the group meets at least	once a month.	
	1. Every	2. All	3. All of us	4. Everybody
15.	A: Can you s	see me now, Doctor?		
	B: I'm sorry	, but I have tir	me now. Please come ba	ack this evening.
	1. a little	2. the little	3. just little	4. little
16.	He doesn't ta	ke of an interest	in stamps, but he pays	attention to
	his coin colle	ction.		
	1. r	much / a great deal	2. much / a grea	at deal of
	3. a	a lot / great	4. a lot of / mud	ch of
17.	A: I bought a	a new pen. Did you and M	ary buy new ones?	
	B: Yes,	us did.		
	1. we both	2. both	3. both of	4. we both of
18.	He's so sick tl	nat there are	chances that he will red	cover.
	1. a few	2. few	3. little	4. a little
19.	Why did	John and Jim go	to see the accident?	
	I ordered	them to stay he	ere.	
	1. k	ooth / one of	2. both / one	
	3. k	ooth of / one of	4. both of / one	
20.	When he show	uted, in g	reen suits turned around	l.
	1. k	ooth of men	2. both the mer	1
	3. t	he both men	4. the men both	1
21.	Assistance is r	needed by the farmers in .	Thaila	nd.
	1. 8	all parts of	2. all of the part	TS .
	3. a	all the parts of	4. all parts of th	е
22.	I would like so	ome sugar but there is	sugar in the bo	wl.
	1. any	2. no	3. none 4. many	

23.	"Is his house beautiful?" "T	here isn't	in the house	≘."
	1. much furniture		2. many furnitures	
	3. a lot of furniture	.S	4. very many furni	tures
24.	Robbie's parents give him		every week.	
	1. too money		2. money enough	
	3. too much mone	У	4. a lot money	
25.	Thailand grows a large number	<u>er of</u> rice <u>ev</u>	<u>very</u> year.	
	1. 2. 3.		4.	
26.	She spends too many time w	atching tele	evision and listening <u>to</u> red	cords.
	1. 2.	3.	4.	
27.	"I <u>expect</u> we're <u>all</u> sleepy," s	aid Professo	or George, " <u>all of</u> good ca	mpers go to
	1. 2.		3.	
	bed <u>early</u> ."			
	4.			
28.	Maria stayed for <u>few</u> moment			d the progress
	1.	2.	3.	
	they <u>had made.</u>			
00	4.	1 11		
29.	I don't know <u>many</u> them too 1.	k <u>tne</u> exam 2.	ination <u>because</u> they left 3.	so <u>quickly</u> . 4.
30	How <u>many</u> is the rent <u>for</u> a <u>cc</u>			4.
<i>5</i> 0.	1. 2.	3.	4.	
		3.		
<u>Use</u>	e something, anything, some	<u>one, anyor</u>	ne, somewhere, anywher	<u>e.</u>
	1. I've got		in my eye.	
	2. There is		at the door.	
	3. We haven't heard		about Peter.	Is he ill?
	4. Do you live		near Mandy?	
	5	want	s to see you.	
	6. Has	seen	my bag?	
	7. My teacher asked me			
	8. Can I have		to drink?	

9.	Don't worry	can tell	you w	here the	post	office
	in the town is.					
Λ	I don't know	ah	o + . ; +			

Choose the correct word (much or very).

- 1. I am (much, very) interested in learning English.
- 2. He wasn't (*much, very*) respected by his employees.
- 3. All of us were (*much, very*) surprised by his frank attitude.
- 4. The (much, very) frightened boy ran to meet his mother.
- 5. You are (*much, very*) more industrious than you were last year.
- 6. It is (very, much) strange that you should be so (much, very) surprised.
- 7. This tree is (much, very) the tallest of all.
- 8. Of all these houses, yours is the (much, very) best.

Complete the sentences using enough, too, and very.

1.	The man is poor to buy a car.
2.	I am just tired to work any more.
3.	Is this box light for you to carry?
4.	Thank you much for your nice words.
5.	Do you have money for emergencies?
6.	How much calcium is to prevent bone loss?
7.	Don't worry about your mother, she'll be home soon.
8.	I'm interested in everyone's opinion, so I appreciate
	your view.
9.	We don't get enough sleep because we have
	much homework to do.
10.	High-definition televisions are much expensive for
	the average American consumer.

Choose the best quantifier to complete the sentences.

- 1. My flat's really nice but the neighbors make (a lot of / not enough / too many) noise.
- 2. There's (a few / not many / too much) traffic in my street.
- 3. My flat's quite small and there's (a lot o f/ not enough / too many) space when we have visitors.
- 4. I often invite (a few / not much / too much) friends for dinner in the evenings.
- 5. I'm looking for a new flat because this one costs (a little / not enough h/ too much) money.
- 6. I like going out so I only spend (a few / a little / a lot of) time at home.
- 7. I've lived in (many / not much / too much) different place, but this is my favorite.
- 8. There 's (a few / not much / too many) nightlife in this part of town

<u>Use some, any, no, somebody, anybody, nobody, something, anything, nothing.</u>

1.	There is	water in that	bottle.		
2.	Let's go, I want to sho	w you			
3.	Did you get	letters last w	veek?		
4.	I haven't met	since	I came here.		
5.	They said	as they	y didn't know what	to say.	
6.	I heard	call your r	name.		
7.	Did he give you	ir	nteresting to read?		
8.	This street has	name.			
9.		except Peter knew	how to do it.		
10	. I have	important	to tell you.		
<u>Ch</u>	Choose the best alternative for each item.				
1.	of us live t	to one hundred, unfor	tunately.		
	a. Few	b. A few	c. Little	d. A little	
2.	Not many people cam	ne to the concert, but	who	came heard	
	some excellent perfo	rmances.			
	a. few	b. the few	c. little	d. the little	

3.	There was	rain bu	t we all had	a lovely time a	at the beach last week.
	a. lots	b. ple	nty of	c. little	d. a little
4	ea	at rice every d	ay.		
	a. M	ost of Thai pe	eople	b. Most	Thai people
	c. al	most of Thai _I	people	d. The r	most Thai people
5.	The problem is	easy enough l	but	students c	ould answer it.
	a. a great ni	umber of	b. few	c. a few	d. a lot of
6. I	arrived after th	e accident ha	ppened, so I	am afraid I car	n give you
	information ab	out it.			
	a. very few	b. or	nly little	c. only few	d. very little
7. I	want some sug	gar but there i	S	in the bowl.	
	a. less	b. ar	ny	c. no	d. none
1 .8	Neither the new	taxes nor the	e crisis	pleasan	t.
	a. has	b. ha	ave	c. is	d. are
9. '	" Have you mar	ny books?" "Y	es, I have		
	a. a	great amount		b. a god	od many
	c. a	good deal		d. few	
10.	He has three s	ons studying i	n the States	and	of them are studying
	medicine.				
	a. either	b. ne	either	c. none	d. all
11.	If you have see	en	pancakes he	ate this morni	ng, you might have
	understood w	hy he is overv	veight.		
	a. a	large amount		b. how	much
	c. a	number of		d. the n	umber of
12.	More than one	boy	needed	for the job.	
	a. are	b. has	S	c. is	d. have
13.	There's	sugar left i	n the kitcher	n. We can have	some tea.
	a. a few	b. a l	ittle	c. few	d. little

14.	Although they planted they didn't	earn				
	a. fewer / fewer	b. fewer crops / less				
	c. less crops / fewer	d. less crop / less				
15.	In the class, there are two clever boys,	might get a scholarship.				
	a. both of them	b. either of whom				
	c. either of them	d. they both				
***	***************************************					

AGREEMENT OF SUBJECTS AND VERBS

คือ การใช้คำกริยาให้ถูกต้องสอดคล้องกับประธาน ได้แก่

1. ถ้าประธานเป็นเอกพจน์ และเป็น present simple tense ต้องใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์ คือ เติม s หรือ es ที่กริยา แต่ถ้าประธานเป็นพหูพจน์ (รวมทั้ง I และ You) กริยาก็ต้องเป็นพหูพจน์ด้วย คือ ไม่ต้องเติม s หรือ es

She walks to school everyday.

They walk to school everyday.

2. ประธานเอกพจน์ 2 ตัวเชื่อมด้วย and ถือเป็นพหูพจน์ กริยาก็ต้องเป็นพหูพจน์

Tom and Mary are students.

ถ้าประธานเชื่อมด้วย and แต่นำมาใช้ถื่อเป็นหน่วยเดียวกัน หรือใช้ไปด้วยกัน ให้ใช้กริยาเป็น เอกพจน์

Bread and butter is very delicious.

Whiskey and soda is my favorite drink.

ประธานเอกพจน์ที่เชื่อมด้วย and โดยเป็นคนๆเดียวกัน (สังเกตจาการใช้ article เพียงตัวเดียว) ถือเป็นเอกพจน์

The manager and owner of this company is my uncle.

3. คำที่แสดงหมวดหมู่ (collective noun) จะใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์หรือพหูพจน์ก็ได้ขึ้นอยู่กับความ ต้องการของผู้พูด ได้แก่

class	jury	family	cabinet	government
group	fleet	team	crew	committee

This football **team is** excellent.

4. ประธานที่มีวลีต่อไปนี้พร้อมคำขยายของมัน จะใช้กริยาเอกพจน์หรือพหูพจน์ ต้องถือเอาตาม ประธานที่วางอยู่หน้าคำเหล่านี้เป็นหลัก

with	as well as	together with	including
in addition to	except	along with	besides
accompanied	excluding	but not	plus
like	in company with		

My friends as well as I are good student.

He not you is a bad boy.

5. คำต่อไปนี้เมื่อใช้เป็นประธานในประโยคให้ใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์

every	everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
someone	somebody	something	somewhere	anyone
anybody	anything	anywhere	no one	nobody

nothing no one except each each of each one either of neither of one of + นามพหูพจน์ not one of + นามพหูพจน์ Each of the boys eats a lot of cookies.

Neither of the two movies is good.

6. ประธานเอกพจน์ 2 ตัวที่เชื่อมด้วย and แล้วไปเรียงตามหลัง each หรือ every ให้ถือเป็น เอกพจน์

Each cat and dog is sitting in the house.

Every boy and girl likes playing game.

7. คำต่อไปนี้ถ้าตามด้วยคำนามเอกพจน์ก็ใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์ ถ้าตามด้วยคำนามพหูพจน์ก็ใช้ กริยาพหูพจน์

a lot of lots of all of half of most of some of none of plenty of heaps of ... percent of

Half of my students are able to speak at least two languages.

All of furniture is mine.

8. ประธานหลายคำที่เชื่อมด้วย of จะใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์หรือกริยาพหูพจน์ ให้ถือเอาตาม ประธานที่อยู่หน้า of เป็นหลัก

Freedom of speech, press and religion is what we need.

The emigration of a large number of people is greater every year.

9. คำนามต่อไปนี้มีรูปเป็นพหูพจน์ แต่จริงๆแล้วเป็นคำนามเอกพจน์ ก็ต้องใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์ physics economics politics mathematics news mumps measles ashes alms means

Politics is difficult to understand.

10. คำนามต่อไปนี้มีรูปเป็นเอกพจน์ แต่ใช้เป็นพหูพจน์ตลอด ก็ต้องใช้กริยาพหูพจน์ people police cattle vermin poultry children

The police are arresting the robber.

11. ชื่อหนังสือ จำนวนเงิน ระยะทางและเวลา แม้จะเป็นพหูพจน์ ก็ต้องใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์เสมอ
A hundred is a long distance to walk in one hour.

Sixty dollars is the cost of this ticket.

12. ประธานหลายตัวที่เชื่อมด้วย either...or, neither... nor, not only...but also... ให้ใช้ กริยาตามประธานที่อยู่หลัง or, nor, but

Neither you <u>nor</u> I am going to have lunch.

Not only English but also mathematics is difficult.

การวางประธานหลังคำเหล่านี้มีหลักการดังนี้

- ถ้าประธานตัวหนึ่งเป็นเอกพจน์และประธานอีกตัวเป็นพหูพจน์ ให้เอาประธานที่เป็นพหูพจน์วางไว้ หลัง or หรือ nor

Either Joy or her friends are good girls.

- ถ้าประธานตัวหนึ่งเป็น I ให้เอา I วางไว้หลัง or หรือ nor

Either James or I am to be blamed.

- ถ้ามีประธาน 2 ตัว ตัวหนึ่งเป็นบอกเล่า อีกตัวหนึ่งเป็นปฏิเสธ คำกริยาต้องถือตามประธานที่เป็น บอกเล่า

She, not they is going to the cinema.

13. Infinitive (กริยาที่มี to นำหน้า) gerund (กริยาที่เติม ing) พร้อมทั้งคำขยายของมัน เมื่อใช้ เป็นประธานในประโยคให้ถือว่าเป็นกริยาเอกพจน์ และใช้กริยาเป็นเอกพจน์เสมอ

To mend car is the work of mechanic.

Climbing mountains is a good exercise.

14. - Only one of + นามพหูพจน์ + that, who, which + กริยาเอกพจน์She is **only one of the five girls who studies** French.

- One of + นามพหูพจน์ + that, who, which + กริยาพหูพจน์ It is one of the ten chairs that I like most.

15. เศษส่วนของเอกพจน์ ก็ใช้กริยาเอกพจน์ และเศษส่วนของพหูพจน์ก็ใช้กริยาพหูพจน์

One – third of the teachers are man.

Three – fourths of the money has been spent.

 ประธานที่เป็นปฏิเสธ 2 ตัวและเชื่อมด้วย and ใช้กริยากับประธานตัวหลัง หรือตัวใกล้ กริยามากที่สุด

No money and no friends were awaiting me.

17. A number of + นามพหูพจน์ + กริยาพหูพจน์ (=กลุ่มหนึ่งซึ่งมีจำนวนมากกว่าหนึ่ง)
The number of + นามพหูพจน์ + กริยาเอกพจน์ (=จำนวนของซึ่งมี 1 หน่วย)

A number of students were late this morning.

The number of pupils in class is small.

18. Many a + นามเอกพจน์ + กริยาเอกพจน์

Many a girl has got high marks. (= Many girls have got high marks.)

19. กริยาตามคำนามที่อยู่ติดกับ relative pronoun

noun + who, which + กริยาตามคำนามข้างหน้า

Vegetarians are people who don't eat meat.

20. Adjective บางคำใช้กับ the จะมีความหมายเป็นคำนามพหูพจน์ ใช้กริยาพหูพจน์
The Japanese are very polite.

- 21. คำที่อยู่เป็นคู่ เช่น trousers, spectacles, scissors ใช้กริยาพหูพจน์

 My trousers are dirty.
- 22. It + กริยาเอกพจน์ + คำนาม / พหูพจน์

"Who broke the window?" "It was Jack and Cot."

23. (เลข) บวก ลบ คูณ หาร + กริยาเอกพจน์ / กริยาพหูพจน์

Ten and fifteen is (are) twenty-five.

Twenty times four is (are) forty.

AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS AND ANTECEDENTS

ความสอดคล้องระหว่างสรรพนามกับประธานที่มาข้างหน้า จะต้องมีพจน์ (number) บุรุษ (person) และเพศ (gender) เดียวกับตัวที่มาข้างหน้า

1. One (คนเรา) คำ possessive pronoun (คำที่แสดงเจ้าของ) คือ one's (ไม่ใช่ his หรือ her)

One must do one's duty. (ไม่ใช่ his, her)

One must be careful what one says. (ไม่ใช่ he)

When **one** enters some people's houses **one has** the uncomfortable feeling that **one is** not wanted.

2. คำ everybody, everyone, somebody, each, either, neither, every ใช้

she, heเมื่อเป็นประธานher, himเมื่อเป็นกรรมher, hers, hisเมื่อเป็นเจ้าของ

Everybody says he will do his best.

Every man and woman is expected to do **his** duty.

If anyone knows the truth, let him tell it.

Exercises

Agreement of Subjects and Verbs

Look at each sentence and think about subject/verb agreement.

Which is the correct answer?

- 1. Everyone have done the homework as expected.
- 2. Some of the money is missing.
- 3. Somebody has forgotten to turn off the TV.
- 4. Each of the cars in the street are new.
- 5. The President as well as his brother was a guest.
- 6. Neither of the computers are working.
- 7. Either wine is fine, thank you.
- 8. The pair of gloves isn't mine.
- 9. The Stars and Stripes fly over the court building.
- 10. Twelve miles is a long distance to run.

Choose the correct form of the verb that agrees with the subject.

- 1. Annie and her brothers (is, are) at school.
- 2. Either my mother or my father (is, are) coming to the meeting.
- 3. The dog or the cats (is, are) outside.
- 4. Either my shoes or your coat (is, are) always on the floor.
- 5. George and Tamara (doesn't, don't) want to see that movie.
- 6. Benito (doesn't, don't) know the answer.
- 7. One of my sisters (is, are) going on a trip to France.
- 8. The man with all the birds (live, lives) on my street.
- 9. The movie, including all the previews, (take, takes) about two hours to watch.
- 10. The players, as well as the captain, (want, wants) to win.
- 11. Either answer (is, are) acceptable.
- 12. Every one of those books (is, are) fiction.
- 13. Nobody (know, knows) the trouble I've seen.
- 14. (Is, Are) the news on at five or six?

- 15. Mathematics (is, are) John's favorite subject, while Civics (is, are) Andrea's favorite subject.
- 16. Eight dollars (is, are) the price of a movie these days.
- 17. (Is, Are) the tweezers in this drawer?
- 18. Your pants (is, are) at the cleaner's.
- 19. There (was, were) fifteen candies in that bag. Now there (is, are) only one left!
- 20. The committee (debates, debate) these questions carefully.
- 21. The committee (leads, lead) very different lives in private.
- 22. The Prime Minister, together with his wife, (greets, greet) the press cordially.
- 23. All of the CDs, even the scratched one, (is, are) in this case.

Correction of Sentences for Practice

- 1. John has been working on the pilot project since two years.
- 2. When he entered the classroom the lecture already was beginning.
- 3. Rama has returned back her book in the library.
- 4. If Peter works hard he would get distinction in the exam.
- 5. They turn up with the flying colors if they practiced well.
- 6. If he told them about the route they would not have missed their way.
- 7. She would not have sent the mail if you did not instruct her.
- 8. If I had painted the picture well it would cost a great deal.
- 9. If the Manager had received your project on time he would not fire you.
- 10. The boy, together with his teachers and friends, are going to the ground.
- 11. A group of people are rushing into the hall.
- 12. The team is divided in different perspectives on the issue.
- 13. Neither the party leader nor the party workers was able to calm the distressed people.
- 14. Data is being collected by the media.
- 15. She is a real good singer.

- 16. All Computer science students should learn computer operating, typing, and how to programme computers.
- 17. The Lawyer has been warning his clients for the last Sunday.
- 18. Everybody on the board have to come to the discussion sessions.
- 19. How could they threaten you and she for this issue?
- 20. She prefers studying individually than studying collaboratively.
- 21. He is adept at cricket, badminton, playing basket ball.
- 22. Neither his followers nor he were welcomed by the society.
- 23. Some of you will have to get their own id cards for inspection.
- 24. If anyone peeps into the room, capture their photographs.
- 25. It must have been him who has sent this mail.
- 26. One should respect your motherland.
- 27. It happen only rarely in life.
- 28. Children is plucking flowers in the garden.
- 29. They purchased a new air conditioner next month.
- 30. They is quarrelling over a trifle.
- 31. It begin to rain as soon as we stepped out of the house.
- 32. The mother was pray for her ailing child.
- 33. Among the two sisters, Habiba is a better dancer
- 34. The officer has given orders to his soldiers yesterday.
- 35. The girl sat down besides the lake.
- 36. The two brothers are quarrelling with one another
- 37. The three business partners are leading their business amicably with each other.
- 38. Easily, we opened the box.
- 39. Please write legible.
- 40. Everyone greatly admired my performance.
- 41. He did all his work satisfactory.
- 42. They used to played cricket during their childhood.

- 43. Varsha saw a lots of swans at the lake.
- 44. Is there some tea in the flask?
- 45. The building does not have much windows, and so it is dark and gloomy inside.
- 46. They did not gave him any ideas for his presentation.
- 47. Eight kilometers are not a long distance for a man who is an athlete.
- 48. The transformer we have just installed silently unlike this noisy generators we had earlier.
- 49. The climate of Ooty is better than Hyderabad.
- 50. A pair of gloves are lying on the bed.

"THE OTHER" GROUP

- 1. another + นามเอกพจน์ (ทำหน้าที่เป็น adjective)
 another (ทำหน้าที่เป็น pronoun)
 หมายถึง an additional one = อีกหนึ่ง, ไม่ได้ชี้เฉพาะ, อันไหนก็ได้
 - Would you like another cup of coffee?
 - My pencil is broken, can you lend me *another*, please?
- 2. **the other + นามเอกพจน์** (ทำหน้าที่เป็น adjective) **the other** (ทำหน้าที่เป็น pronoun)

 หมายถึง the second of the two = อีกหนึ่งในสอง, ชี้เฉพาะ, ส่วนที่เหลืออีกหนึ่ง

- He held a sword in one hand and a pistol in the other.

3. the other + นามพหูพจน์ (ทำหน้าที่เป็น adjective)
the others (ทำหน้าที่เป็น pronoun)
หมายถึง the remaining ones = ที่เหลืออยู่อีกหลายอัน, ชี้เฉพาะ

- We got home by 6 o'clock, but **the others** didn't get back until about 8 o'clock.
- **The other guests** that we had expected did not come. ใช้คู่กับ *some of...*
 - Some of the television program are interesting but the others are not.
- 4. other + นามพหูพจน์ (ทำหน้าที่เป็น adjective) others (ทำหน้าที่ pronoun)

หมายถึง different remaining ones = อื่นๆ ตัวอย่าง

- Here are other ways of doing this exercise.
- I have no other friends but you.

ใช้คู่กับ *some* ...

- **Some** girls like cosmetics, **others** don't.
- 5. each other ซึ่งกันและกัน (two people concerned = แค่ 2)
 one another ซึ่งกันและกัน (more people concerned = มากกว่า 2 ขึ้นไป)
 ตัวอย่าง
 - The two sisters love each other.
 - Little children love one another.

- one after another = one by one (ทีละ...)
 ตัวอย่าง
 - The teacher tells the students to come to see here **one after another**.
 - These boxes are heavy, please carry them **one after another**.
- 7. any other + นามเอกพจน์ = อื่นใด no other + นามเอกพจน์ = ไม่มีอื่นใด

ตัวอย่าง

- This test is more difficult than any other test.
- No other city is as busy as Bangkok.
- 8. every other day = วันเว้นวัน
 the other day = เมื่อ 2-3 วันมานี้
 some other day = สักวันหนึ่ง

ตัวอย่าง

- We have studied ballet on Monday, Wednesday and Friday, so we have studied it **every other day**.
- I dream that I will go out in the space some other day.
- I met Peter the other day.

Exercises

Use 'other', 'others', 'the other', 'another', 'each other' or 'one another' in the following sentences.

1.	She found her lost ring in the drawer	day.
2.	His house is bigger than any	one in this town
3.	Some boys like to play football,	don't.
4.	May I have cu	up of coffee?
5.	Our friends help one	to do that work.
6.	He gave me five books but I can see only three.	
	Where are	_?
7.	No mountain is	
8.	Some of my friends enjoyed the movie at the S	iam, didn't.
	His car is old and out of date. He wants to buy	
one	2.	
10.	The students learn mathematics every	day.
	Some of the girls in that room are singing,	
	are dancing.	
12.	These children always quarrel among themselv	ves. They don't like one
13.	You and I ought to help each	·
	She looks thirsty. Please give her	
15.	Some tourists like to go to Chiengmai,	don't.
16.	Your essay is very short. Write	page or two.
17.	The students have their English class every	day.
18.	Suree is prettier than any	girl in my class.
	Some people like sticky rice,	
20.	She met her friend at the Siam	day.
		. won't we?

22.	Both boys will hurt each	if we don't stop
	them fighting.	
23.	Tom and Tony weren't in the garden. Tom w	as watching television.
	Where was?	
24.	The children in this family all love one	·
25.	George and his wife help each	with the housework
	at weekends.	
26.	I have two dictionaries, one for myself and _	
	for my sister.	
27.	The students went to receive the prizes one	after
28.	She is clever, on	hand she is lazy.
29.	He has only one leg,	was amputated during
	the war.	
30.	I have three sisters.	is a nurse;is
	a teacher and	is an interior decorator.
***	*************	*********

AN ENGLISH WORD WITH SEVERALMEANINGS

ภาษาอังกฤษ เป็นภาษาที่มีคำศัพท์มากมาย คำศัพท์แต่ละคำอาจมีความหมายได้หลายนัยหรือ หลายความหมาย โดยความหมายจะแตกต่างกับไปตามปริบท

ตัวอย่างคำศัพท์ที่มีความหมายหลายนัย

1. blue (adi.)

1.1 เศร้า / เสียใจ

I always feel blue when the sun sets. ฉันมักจะรู้สึกเศร้าเมื่อยามพระอาทิตย์ตก

1.2 เกี่ยวข้องกับเรื่องเพศ

Some say Thai jokes are a bit blue.
บางคนกล่าวว่าเรื่องตลกแบบไทย ๆ มักจะเกี่ยวกับเรื่องเพศ

1.3 ดนตรีประเภทหนึ่ง (noun - เป็นรูปพหูพจน์เสมอ)

I like the blues. ฉันชอบเพลงบลู

1.4 อย่างไม่คาดฝัน (สำนวน out of the blue)

He arrived completely out of the blue. เขามาโดย (ที่เรา) ไม่คาดฝันเลย

2. body (n.)

2.1 ส่วนลำตัว / ตัวถังของเรือบิน / รถยนต์

The Boeing 747 has a wide **body.** เครื่องบินโบอิง 747 มี**ลำตัว**กว้าง

2.2 ซากศพ

Several **bodies** from the wrecked ship were washed ashore. **ซากศพ**หลายศพจากเรือแตกถูกพัดมาเกยฝั่ง

2.3 เนื้อหาส่วนที่สำคัญ

A piece of news has a lead and a **body**. ข่าวชิ้นหนึ่งประกอบด้วยบทนำข่าวกับเ**นื้อข่าว**

2.4 ร่างกาย

We wear clothes to keep our **bodies** warm. เขาสวมใส่เสื้อผ้าเพื่อทำให้**ร่างกาย**อบอุ่น

3. confidence (n.)

3.1 ความเชื่อมั่นในความสามารถ

He lacks confidence in himself when he appears in public. เขาขาดความเชื่อมั่นในตนเองเมื่อปรากฎตัวในที่สาธารณะ

-102-

3.2 ความศรัทธา ความไว้วางใจ ความไว้ใจในคนอื่นหรือสิ่งอื่น

They have no confidence in the computer system. เขาไม่มีความไว้วางใจระบบคอมพิวเตอร์

3.3 ความลับ

The girl exchanged confidences about their boyfriends. เด็กผู้หญิงแลกความลับเรื่องแฟน ๆ ของเธอ

3.4 บอกความลับ

He took her into his confidence and told her the whole truth. เขาบอกความลับและความจริงทั้งหมดให้เธอทราบ

4. critical (adi.)

4.1 สำคัญมาก

This was a critical moment in his career. ตอนนี้เป็นช่วงเวลาที่สำคัญมากในอาชีพของเขา

4.2 สาหัส / อันตราย

He was taken to hospital because his condition was critical. เขาถูกนำส่งโรงพยาบาลเพราะอาการสาหัส

4.3 แสดงความคิดเห็นอย่างรุนแรง

He was highly critical of the government's policy. เขาวิพากษ์วิจารณ์นโยบายรัฐบาลอย่างรุนแรง

5. deliver (v.)

5.1 ส่ง

The postman delivers letters every day. บุรุษไปรษณีย์ส่งจดหมายทุกวัน

5.2 บรรยาย / ปราศรัย

He delivered an interesting lecture on Thai history at the seminar. เขาบรรยายเรื่องประวัติศาสตร์ใหยในสัมมนา

5.3 ช่วยทำคลอด

The co-pilot and the steward delivered a baby girl in mid-flight.
ผู้ช่วยกัปตันและพนักงานต้อนรับชายช่วยทำคลอดทารกเพศหญิงในระหว่างเที่ยวบิน

6. a. fair (adj.)

6.1 ยุติธรรม

You must be fair to both sides. คุณต้องยุติธรรมต่อทั้งสองฝ่าย

6.2 ดีพอใช้

His knowledge of English language is fair. ความรู้ภาษาอังกฤษของเขาพอใช้ได้

6.3 ผิวขาว / ผิวสีอ่อน

Unprotected fair skin gets sunburned quickly. ผิวขาวที่ไม่ได้ปกป้องถูกแดดเผาง่าย

b. fair (n.)

6.4 การแสดงสินค้า

I bought many books at the Chula book fair. ฉันซื้อหนังสือหลายเล่มจากงานหนังสือจุฬาฯ

6.5 งานออกร้าน

The Thai Red Cross fair is usually held in January. งานกาชาดมักจะจัดในเดือนมกราคม

7. figure (n.)

7.1 ตัวเลข

Her income is in six figures. รายได้ของเธอเป็นตัวเลขหกหลัก

7.2 จำนวน

According to the research, there are high unemployment figures. จากผลการวิจัย มีจำนวนคนตกงานสูง

7.3 รูปร่าง

She is doing exercises to improve her figure. เธอออกกำลังกายเพื่อทำให้รูปร่างดีขึ้น

7.4 บุคคลสำคัญในแขนงใดแขนงหนึ่ง

The late President Yitzak Rabin was one of the leading political figures of this country.

อดีตประธานาธิบดี ยิทซัค ราบิน ผู้ล่วงลับเป็นบุคคลสำคัญทางการเมืองคนหนึ่งในประเทศนี้

8. host (n.)

8.1 เจ้าภาพ

Since his father was still abroad, he acted as **host** at the dinner party. เพราะว่าพ่อของเขายังอยู่ต่างประเทศ เขาก็เลยต้องเป็น**เจ้าภาพ**งานเลี้ยงอาหารเย็น

8.2 พิธีกรรายการวิทยุ, โทรทัศน์

Jack is a famous talk show **host.** แจ็คเป็น**พิธีกรรายการพูด**ที่มีชื่อเสียง

8.3 ประเทศเจ้าภาพ

Thailand was the **host** country for the World Bank meeting in 1991. ประเทศไทยเป็น**ประเทศเจ้าภาพ**ในการประชุมธนาคารโลกในปี ค.ศ. 1991

9. ill (adi.)

9.1 ป่วย

David was ill when he returned from upcountry. เดวิดป่วยเมื่อเขากลับมาจากต่างจังหวัด

เมื่อใช้ในความหมายอื่นๆ นอกจากป่วย

- 9.2 There's a lot of ill feeling (= jealousy, anger, etc.) about her being promoted. มีการอิจฉาริษยาเกี่ยวกับเรื่องที่เธอได้เลื่อนตำแหน่ง
- 9.3 If a black cat crosses your path, it's considered ill omen.

ถ้าแมวดำวิ่งตัดหน้าไปถือว่าเป็นลางร้าย (โชคร้าย)

10. man (n.)

10.1 คน (ทั้งผู้หญิง ผู้ชาย)

Any man could do that.

ใคร ๆ ก็ทำได้

10.2 มนุษย์ / มนุษยชาติ

Man is mortal.

มนุษย์ไม่เป็นอมตะ (**มนุษย์**ทุกคนต้องตาย)

10.3 ผู้ชาย

She behaves like a man. เธอประพฤติตัวราวกับผู้ชาย

10.4 สามี

They are **man** and wife. เขาเป็น**สาม**ีภรรยากัน

11. operation (n.)

11.1 ปฏิบัติการ

U.S. soldiers performed important military operations in Bosnia. ทหารสหรัฐฯ ปฏิบัติการทางทหารครั้งสำคัญที่บอสเนีย

11.2 การผ่าตัด

The surgeon is performing a minor operation on her hand. ศัลยแพทย์กำลังผ่าตัดเล็กที่มือของเธอ

11.3 สำนวน in (into) operation หมายถึง กำลังดำเนินการ หรือ กำลังใช้

When does the new traffic law come into operation? เมื่อไหร่กฎหมายจราจรจะออกใช้

12. to run (v.)

12.1 รับผิดชอบ / ดูแล / จัดการ

She runs the household. เธอดูแลบ้าน

12.2 เลื้อย

The vine runs over the porch. เถาองุ่นเลื้อยไปตามระเบียง

12.3 กำลังทำงาน

The engine is running. เครื่องจักรกำลังทำงาน

12.4 ใหล

Tears were running his face. น้ำตาไหลอาบหน้าเขา

12.5 สี (ตก) ของเหลว (ละลาย) เพราะความร้อนหรือน้ำ

If a dye is nonfast, the colour will run when the material is washed. ถ้าสีย้อมไม่ติด เมื่อนำไปซักสีก็จะตก

13. sentence (n.)

13.1 ประโยค

The structure of this sentence is awkward. โครงสร้างของประโยคนี้พิกล

13.2 การตัดสินลงโทษ

The sentence was three years in prison and a fine of 100,000 baht. การตัดสินลงโทษ คือ จำคุก 3 ปี และปรับเป็นเงิน 1 แสนบาท

14. subject (n.)

14.1 หัวข้อ

He tried to change the subject of the conversation from politics to sport. เขาพยายามเปลี่ยนหัวข้อการสนทนาจากเรื่องการเมืองเป็นกีฬา

14.2 วิชา

Chemistry is my favorite subject เคมีเป็นวิชาที่ฉันชอบมาก

14.3 พลเมืองของประเทศที่มีพระมหากษัตริย์เป็นประมุข

He denied that he is a British subject. เขาปฏิเสธว่าไม่ได้เป็นพลเมืองอังกฤษ

15. table (n.)

15.1 ตาราง

The figures in the **table** show the decrease in this year's profits. ตัวเลขใน**ตาราง**แสดงให้เห็นผลกำไรที่ลดลง

15.2 สารบัญ

The **table of contents** shows the different parts into which the book is divided.

สารบัญจะแสดงถึงส่วนต่าง ๆ ตามที่หนังสือแบ่งไว้

15.3 สำนวน under the table (of money) เงินสินบน เงินใต้โต๊ะ

They offered me one million **under the table** if I would vote against the government's plans.

เขา**ติดสินบน**ฉันเป็นจำนวนเงิน 1 ล้านบาท ถ้าฉันออกเสียงคัดค้านแผนการ ของรัฐบาล

timetable (n.) = ตารางเวลาเข้า/ออก ของรถ/รถไฟ/เครื่องบิน (British English)

= ตารางสอน (American English)

Exercises

Translate these following sentences.

1.	The death sentence has been abolished in many countries and replaced by a life sentence.
2.	Many countries have joined in the famine relief operation in Africa.
3.	She underwent a major heart operation.
4.	His Majesty the King always cares for his subjects.
5.	She wrote a book on the subject of cooking.
6.	My sister is forty now, but she has kept her figure.
7.	Please write the number both in words and in figures.
8.	We exchanged confidences and I promised to keep each other's secrets forever
9.	He had no confidence in anyone around him.
10.	Will you deliver these goods for me at home?
11.	President Clinton delivered an emotional speech at the funeral of the late President Rabin.
12.	The baby had to be delivered by caesarian operation.

13.	She felt blue after giving birth to the baby.	
14.	His illness is rather critical.	
15.	She was fair and blue-eyed.	
16.	Look for the information in the table of contents.	
17.	Drinks were being prepared by the host.	
18.	His host country had supplied him with a place to live for	r a week.
19.	She said she did not want to go out with a man who had	such ill manners.
20.	Somsri has been ill for a couple of days.	
21.	There's a lot of ill feeling between father and son.	
22.	The sewing machine won't run properly.	
23.	The tears ran down her cheeks.	
24.	If you have a bad cold, your nose runs.	
25.	He hopes his son will run the business successfully.	
26.	All men must die.	

27.	Nelson's body was brought back to England for burial.				
28.	The bodies of most animals are covered with hair or fur.				
29.	Man is said to be able to live without food for seven days.				
30.	Men are weak, but men are also strong.				
****	*****	·**•	****	· * * * * *	****

Exercises

Phrasal Verbs

Complete the following sentences.

1. The police accused me (to, of, by, on) stealing a car.
2. Steven is accustomed (to, of, with, on) eating Thai food.
3. His knowledge is superior (than, to, at, on) hers.
4. The novel written in U.S.A. is based (on, from, by, in) his experience of life.
5. Let me congratulate you (in, with, on, to) your success.
6. Though I don't allow him to say, but he persists (of, on, at, in) saying.
7. I went to see my friend (of, off, from, in) at Don Muang when he left here
for England.
8. My friend boasted (about, on, of, to) his success too much.
9. These foreigners want to exchange dollars (for, in, with, at) Thai money at
my office.
10. Can he confess the truth (at, with, on, to) the police?
11. Thai soldiers have to protect their country, and they won't yield
(with, to, from, by) the communists.
12. Her means is equivalent (to, with, than, at) yours.
13. Our teacher prohibited us (to, from, about, at) smoking.
14. She is sick (of, to, at, on) living with her husband together.
15. Your manager is never responsible (of, for, to, with) his duty.
16. Somsri was employed (to, of, at, in) washing clothes in my house.
17. His brother disappointed (to, with, for, at) low marks.
18. Our country is famous (for, about, to, at) the fine arts.
19. This television is similar (with, for, about, to) that one.
20. You shouldn't be jealous (of, with, from, to) her beauty.
21. When you get (to, by, off, at) the post office, please lay this letter
the box.
22. Her reason is excellent so I give (on, over, with, up) chatters.

23. After his father had died, he look (on, over, with, up) chattles.					
24. He lost his pen and then he went back to look(after, at, fo	or, in) it.				
25. She suspected you (to, of, on, in) the thief who stole her	diamond ring				
last night.					
<u>Directions</u> : Fill in the blanks with the most appropriate idioms.					
1. He me very late last night.	make out				
2. Don't the poor.	put up with				
3. I want to be	take to				
4. Do you think he willif I give him some whisky.	went over				
5. I willyou as far as the post office.	come round				
6. The police tried to the crime.	come by				
7. He the house thoroughly before buying it.	go with				
8. Why do people such silly things?	call on				
9. Boys girls like fish to water.	get over				
10. I can'tthe meaning of the poem.	drop in				
11. You should buy that blouse. It will well	look down on				
your red suit.	turned out				
12. I hope that money was honestly	take out				
13. Let'sJohn at John's house.	clear up				
14. Sompong was really upset when he failed the test.	me along with				
He thought he would never feeling so stupid.	took down				
15. Some rich people for a long holiday abroad.	called up				
16. She knows how to her father.	get round				
17. This school has some first-rate scholars.	went away				
18. The students what this teacher lectured.	by myself				
19 your hands of your pocket.					
20. I thought I'd on you while I was passing.					

MORE EXERCISES

Directions: Choose the best item to complete the following.

1.	. South America, as a whole, is a rich continent, it does not have				
the geographical conditions which make for favorable economic developme					
	1.	Therefore	2.	However	
	3.	Moreover	4.	Consequently	
2.	A: Why are	you sniffing?			
	B: I had a co	old last week and I can't seem to		it.	
	1.	get rid of	2.	keep off	
	3.	run out of	4.	do away with	
3.	A: When did	Suthee graduate?			
	B: He didn't				
	A: Oh!				
	B: He had to	quit because of some trouble a	t ho	ome. Otherwise, he	
	when we	all did.			
	1.	graduated	2.	might graduate	
	3.	would graduate	4.	could have graduated	
4.	The child ope	ned the heavy oak door		, he trembled inwardly.	
	1.	Not knowing what to expect			
	2.	Had he not known what to expe	ct		
	3.	Not to know what to expect			
	4.	He did not know what to expect			
5.	There must ex	kist in a modern community a suff	icie	nt number of persons who	
	possess the te	echnical skill to maintain	the	numerous devices upon	
	our	physical comforts depend.			
	1.	require - whom	2.	requires - which	
	3.	required – which	4.	requiring – whom	
6.	Charles Hogm	an was born serious physical	def	fects because his mother was	
	stricken with	German measles the early	stag	ges her pregnancy.	
	1.	of – at – of	2.	with – during – of	
	3.	by – in – during	4.	from – about – during	

	Movements and	gestures reveal a pe	erson's mo	ood. The way	a person moves
and g	gestures indicates	7 he is sad, h	арру,	8 In fac	t, it is a (n) 9
guide	e to his feelings tha	n language, because	body mo	vements	10 and are less
likely	to be censored th	an language.			
7.	1. how	2. why	3.	where	4. whether
8.	1. frustrated or	depressing	2.	frustrated o	or depressed
	3. frustrating and	d depressing	4.	frustrating a	and depressed
9.	 equally accur 	ate		very accura	
	3. more accurat			less accura	
10.		de unconsciously			ısly are often made
	3. are often mad	de unconscious	4.	are made u	ınconscious often
	(3), and (4 Choose the for the cor	part which is gramr	matically	incorrect or	not appropriate
11. V	(1)	(2)		(3)	stupia /
		(2)		(5)	
	than you are? /				
	(4)				
12. l	Jsually I would sne	ak out the back / so	not to be	e seen, / and	call my big,
	(1)		(2)		(3)
k	olack sheep dog/t	o go along./			
		(4)			
13. H	Have you ever notic	ced that / whatever	the persor	n at the next	table orders, /
	(1)			(2)	
	it always looks bet	ter / than your? /			
	(3)	(4)			
14. 7	There are several ic	leas / or theories abo	out / how	can birds na	vigate / so accurately./
	(1)	(2)		(3)	(4)
	(1)	(4)		(3)	(7)

15.	5. Finding out how language works / is as fascinated as / finding out the working of				
	(1)	(2)	(3)	
	the atom / o	or the secrets of space. /			
		(4)			
Dire	ections : For e	each of the blanks in the	following	dialogues, choose the most	
	app	propriate item.			
16.	An acquaint	ance wishes a happy birthd	lay to ano	ther.	
	A:	!			
	B: Thanky	ou. How did you know?			
	1.	Cheers	2.	Many happy returns	
	3.	Happy anniversary	4.	Here's to your health	
17.	A husband a	nd his wife are on their way	/ home.		
	Wife: It loc	ks like it's going to rain hea	vily before	e we get home.	
	Husband: .				
	1.	I'm expecting the same.	2.	Yes, I'm afraid so.	
	3.	No, I'm afraid not.	4.	Don't bother.	
18.	In a cafeteria	1			
	A: How abo	out another cup of coffee?			
	B:				
	1.	A little sweeter please.	2.	No, let's not worry about it.	
	3.	Do you think we have time	e? 4.	Yes, I'd rather have a cup.	
19.	Employee :	Could you spare me a few	minutes?		
	Employer :				
	1.	By all means.	2.	Yes, definite.	
	3.	Be seeing you	4.	Remember to drop in	
som	netime.				
20.	. •	ermission at a cinema, a me	•	wants to smoke.	
		oer: Have you got a light, p			
	2 ^{na} movie-ga	oer:			
	1.	I'm sorry I don't have any	. 2.	It's my pleasure.	
	3.	Yes, I have.	4.	Here you are.	

Directions: Read this passage and choose the best answer for each blank.

Doctors have remarked that people entering adulthood are sometimes suffering from nutritional disorders of varying intensity and duration. Some young adults bring with them the21...... of prolonged overnutrition. The added strain placed on the heart by extreme fatness has long been injurious to their22...... condition. An overweight condition often originates in childhood when a child fails to get the necessary exercise for optimum health,23...... by overeating. To lose excess weight and to achieve and maintain a24...... weight is extremely difficult for both children and adults but not impossible.

21.	1. problem	2. experience	3. process	4. occurrence
22.	1. mental	2. physical	3. emotional	4. psychological
23.	1. occupied	2. corrected	3. accompanied	4. conditioned
24.	1. normal	2. common	3. minimum	4. genuine
25.	1. matter	2. field	3. position	4. condition
26.	1. cause	2. prevent	3. reduce	4. change
27.	1. solved	2. observed	3. limited	4. neglected
28.	1. excessive	2. appropriate	3. ordinary	4. inadequate
29.	1. difficulties	2. possibilities	3. activities	4. opportunities
30.	1. absence	2. incidence	3. restriction	4. conclusion

Directions	· Ch	2000	tha	corroct	angwar
טוופננוטווא	. CH	JUSE	uie	conect	aliswei.

1.	Many airline companies today require th	at all luggage before passengers			
	are admitted to the waiting rooms.				
	1. inspected	2. be inspected			
	3. inspect	4. is corrected			
2.	Nowadays people often use the word "d	drug" to refer to pills or mixtures taken to relieve pain or			
to					
	make people				
	1. be slept 2. slept	3. to sleep 4. sleep			
3.	He has friends in his classes nov	v than he had last year.			
	1. much more 2. less	3. many 4. very more			
4	Never before have so many people in the	ne United States in soccer.			
	1. been interested	2. interested			
	3. interesting	4. been interesting			
5.	yesterday, that boy felt asha	med of his wrong-doing.			
	1. Was severely punished	2. Severely punished			
	3. Be severely punishing	4. Having punished			
6	A: When did Suthee graduate?				
	B: He didn't.				
	A: Oh!				
	B: He had to quit because of some trouble at home. Otherwise, he				
	when we all did.				
	1. graduated	2. might graduate			
	3. would graduate	4. could have graduated			
7.	The child opened the heavy oak door	, he trembled inwardly.			
	1. Not knowing what to expect	2. Had he not known what to expect			
	3. Not to know what to expect	4. He did not know what to expect			
8.	There must exist in a modern communit	y a sufficient number of persons who			
	possess the technical skill to ma	intain the numerous devices upon			
	our physical comforts depend.				
	1. require - whom	2. requires – which			
	3. required - which	4. requiring – whom			

- 9. Charles Hogman was born serious physical defects because his mother was stricken with German measles the early stages her pregnancy.
 - 1. of at of

- 2. with during of
- 3. by in during
- 4. from about during
- 10. A barometer is a device measure atmospheric pressure.
 - 1. which used to

2. is used to

3. used to

- 4. which it is used to
- 11. 1. Neither of my brothers is handsome, but both like to be flattered.
 - 2. Either Carol or Grace are coming to the recital, but one of them has to stay home.
 - 3. At last, late in the afternoon, a long line of flags and colored umbrellas were seen moving toward the gate of the palace.
 - 4. Some of my papers has been lost.
- 12. 1. Quinine, medicine that formerly was used to combat malaria, is extracted from the bark of the cinchona tree, which is native to the tropical forests of Java and South America.
 - 2. Don't you think that she would have helped you yesterday if she were able to?
 - 3. The mayor proposed that the police commission immediately investigated the charges that had been made by some of the citizens in the community.
 - 4. He talked as though he saw a ghost before.
- 13. 1. For the past years, Melvin had had the opportunity to travel to many remote areas of the earth.
 - 2. Dr. Smith is a capable, dedicated doctor and his patients have missed him ever since his death.
 - 3. Every machine consumes more energy than it creates.
 - 4. A rapid drop in temperature often follow severe thunderstorms in the summer.
- 14. 1. Her uncle, along with her two cousins, demand that she stay in town one more day.
 - 2. The branches of a bush usually rises directly from the ground and do not spread out from a central trunk.
 - 3. Neither rain nor sleet nor snow keeps the mailman from his appointed rounds.
 - 4. Nancy tried to tell me that all the things Bob said was true.

- 15. 1. What does that word (the one you used to describe your sister) means the way you used it?
 - 2. While Mary was in the library doing research, she was finding a book which contained the letter the author had written to a son.
 - 3. By the late eighteenth century the Spanish will have created a stable society in California.
 - 4. When I last saw Janet, she was hurrying to her next class on the other side of campus and did not have time to talk.
- 16. 1. She visits her aunt every Sunday when she was living in the country last year.
 - 2. He had been living in France for several years when he had to return to England to take over the family business.
 - 3. Europeans first come to Uganda in 1862, while searching for the source of the Nile.
 - 4. That baby has been crying non-stop for an hour yesterday.
- 17. 1. All of these furnitures are new.
 - 2. Neither you nor I was glad.
 - 3. The primary function of leaves are to manufacture food from carbon dioxide and water by means of a complex chemical process called photosynthesis.
 - 4. Although a number of houses in that area are still in need of repair, there have been much improvement in their appearance.
- 1. The monitor should insist that students not talk during the test.
 - 2. She ordered them not sit here.
 - 3. It's time for you started work.
 - 4. It is necessary that an employee to finish his work on time.
- 19. 1. Years ago, when they lived on a farm, they were used to get up at five o'clock every morning.
 - 2. I have completed my university education before I am twenty-one.
 - 3. The letter I have just received from my father is too long to read before I have lunch.
 - 4. I have finished my composition just as the teacher said, 'Pens down'.

- 2. I'd rather you not move from here.
- 3. If only he took my advice years ago.
- 4. We wish we had trees in the garden of my present house.
- 21. 1. The old man was believed that he fought in World War II.
 - 2. The old man fought in World War II was believed.
 - 3. It was believed that the old man fought in World War II.
 - 4. People believed the old man fight in World War II.
- 22. 1. After killing his main rival, they are forced to become outlaws pursued by the police.
 - 2. After killing his main rival, he was forced to become an outlaw pursued by the police.
 - 3. After his main rival being killed, he is forced to become an outlaw being pursued by the police.
 - 4. After he kills his main rival, he was forced to become an outlaw pursued by the police.

23.	A husband and his wife are on their way home.					
	Wife: It I	looks like it's going to rain heavily before we get home.				
	Husband	·				
	1.	I'm expecting the same.		2.	Yes, I'm afraid so.	
	3.	No, I'm afraid not.		4.	Don't bother.	
24.	In a cafeteria					
	A: How	about another cup of coffee?)			
	B:					
	1.	A little sweeter please.		2.	No, let's not worry about it.	
	3.	Do you think we have time?		4.	Yes, I'd rather have a cup.	
25.	Employee :	Could you spare me a few n	ninu	utes?		
	Employer :					
	1.	By all means.	2.	Yes,	definite.	

4. Remember to drop in sometime.

3. Be seeing you

- 26. You meet someone at an airport. After chatting for a while, you ask:
 - 1. How do you do your living?
 - 2. What do you make a living?
 - 3. How do you take it living?
 - 4. What do you do for a living?
- 27. A foreigner asks you the way to the Floating Market. You don't know the way, so you say:
 - 1. Sorry. Don't know.
 - 2. Sorry. I'm a newcomer here.
 - 3. I'm afraid where it is.
 - 4. You as well as I don't know the way too.
- 28. An acquaintance likes the way you dress. You look marvelous in your dress. She gives you a compliment. Which of the following replies wouldn't you give to your friend?
 - 1. Thank you, my mother made it for me.
 - 2. Actually, everything looks nice on me.
 - 3. Thank you, you're sweet.
 - 4. Oh, really!
- 29. Thong: "I'm going to work in Udorn. Is it very hot there?"

 Nid: "....."
 - 1. Take good care of yourself. You'll love it.
 - 2. Don't worry. You'll soon get used to the heat.
 - 3. You'll see a lot of interesting things there, the heat among them.
 - 4. Haven't you got any plans at all against the heat?
- 30. Customer: "How much do I owe you now?"

Check-out Clerk: "That'll be 30 dollars for today."

Customer: "Can I use a check here?"

Check-out Clerk: "....."

- 1. Yes, you'll have to check out here.
- 2. Sure, go to the next counter and ask for a check.
- 3. Sure, you can use your payment check here.
- 4. Sure, and I'll need your driver's license too, please.

- - 1. he didn't arrive on time.
 - 2. the train had arrived.
 - 3. we got on the train without him.
 - 4. we were waiting on the train.
- 32. "An intruder alarm which works by radar has been developed by a British company. Radar offers some advantages over ultrasonic systems which may be activated accidentally by events such as telephone bells. The RTC radar alarm will detect a moving man-size target at up to 10 meters."

The paragraph is about

- 1. how the sound system works.
- 2. what activates telephone bells.
- 3. what the radar alarm can offer.
- 4. why the company promotes the new machine.
- 33. "The humming bird, despite its small size, is in fact, one of the marvels of the bird world. It surpasses all other birds, and does many strange things that none of the rest can do. It can stand still in the air, for instance, as can almost no other. It is by standing still in the air that it makes its living. A human being who could stand still in the air could make a living also by going into vaudeville. The humming bird, performs this feat as a part of the work of getting food, just as man milks a cow or digs potatoes. It does the trick for its dinner."

This selection tells about

- 1. the humming bird's superiority.
- 2. the humming bird's way of getting food.
- 3. the humming bird's trick.
- 4. the humming bird's strange deeds.
- 34. "The injured captain, lying in the bow, was thinking sadly."

the bow means:

- 1. weapon for shooting arrows
- 2. a slender rod with horsehairs on it for playing the violin
- 3. the front part of a boat or ship
- 4. knot made with loops

35. "I rose up from the stone on which I was seated, determining to go to the				
	town, with my little h	orse and cart, an	nd <i>procure</i> what I w	anted."
	procure means:			
	1. get	2. grasp	3. hold	4. grip
36.	"The temperature in th	ne afternoon was	so <i>mild</i> that none	of the men walking in
	procession through th	ne street wore a	coat."	
	mild means :			
	1. soft	2. gentle	3. not severe	4. warm
37.	" Astronomers can <i>ca</i>	<i>lculate</i> when th	ese will be eclipses.	n
	calculate means :			
	1. figure out	2. put on	3. count on	4. work on
38.	The teacher <i>distribut</i>	<i>ed</i> the examinat	ion paper to the cla	ISS.
	distributed means:			
	1. carried out	2. checked o	ut 3. spread o	ut 4. hand out
39.	If you don't know the	meaning of this	word, ${\it look}$ it ${\it up}$ in	a dictionary.
	look up means	:		
	1. consult	2. find	3. inspect	4. study
40.	He's decided to stay l	here, pro	obably for the last o	of his life.
	1. permane	ntly	2. tempor	arily
	3. sentimer	ntally	4. prosper	ously

Grammar Structure.

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. You never talk to him	and never help him,	·	
1. either	2. neither	3. too	4. so
2. He used to play footb	oall but he	any more.	
1. didn't	2. isn't	3. doesn't	4. plays
3. This building used to	be our headquarters b	out itan	y more.
1. didn't	2. isn't	3. doesn't	4. does
4. How much do you ea	rn for?		
1. a week	k pay	2. a weeks' pay	
3. a week	k' pay	4. a week's pay	
5. I am very pleased	your progr	ess.	
1. with	2. in	3. to	4.at
6. Do you like	young girls?		
1. long-hair	2. long hair	3. long-haired	4. long hairs
7. The play was	television.		
1. at	2. on	3. in	4. with
8. I haven't been to the	Middle East but I'd _	·	
1. like to	2. like	3. like so	4. like that
9. You you	ır name yet, madam.		
1. didn't	sign	2. don't sign	
3. haven	't signed	4. aren't signed	
10. Who?	It's Mike.		
1. is spea	king	2. speaks	
3. speak		4. does speak	
11. We couldn't see the	e moon because there	were clo	uds.
1. many	2. too	3. too many	4. many too
12. They looked at me_	·		
1. with ca	areful	2. carefully	
3. careful		4. with carefully	
13. Everything in your be	ooks		
1. look st	rangely	2. looks strangely	
3. look st	range	4. looks strange	

14.		United Nations	in New Yorl	Κ.
	1. The, are	2. The, is	3. X, is	4. X, are
15.	They	international polit	ics.	
		cussed	2. discussed	about
	3. disc	cussed on	4. discussed	in
16.	They talked abou	ut international politics _	lun	ch.
	1. between	2.among	3. during	4.on
17. \	Who	the washing for you?		
	1. do	2.does	3. makes	4.make
18. \	We left our flat _	his wh	ite Toyota.	
	1. by	2.with	3. in	4.at
19. [Did you stop	petrol on	your way?	
	1. for	2.to	3. with	4.at
20. I	k	now where she	now.	
	1. didn't, is	2.don't, was	3. don't, is	4.didn't, was
21. I		here all my life.		
	1.live	2.lived	3. am living	4.have lived
22. \	Where's your hus	sband? He	with children.	
	1. is playing	2.plays	3. play	4.played
23. 9	She's been readi	ng since we	in.	
	1. come	2.have come	3. came	4. are coming
24. 9	She	when we came in.		
	1.is crying	2.was crying	3. cried	4.cries
25. ¯	They searched ev	verywhere, but they four	nd	
	1. son	nething	2.nothing	
	3. any	thing	4.not anythi	ng
26. \	Why did he look	ed?		
	1. worried	2.worry	3. worrying	4.worries
27.D	o you see that r	nan a bea	rd?	
	1. in	2.at	3. on	4.with
28. I	How much did yo	ou pay t	these books?	
	1. on	2.to	3. at	4.for
29. \	When	you last move house	e?	
	1. do	2.did	3. will	4.have

30. How many books	s do you have?	at all.	
1. None	2.No	3. Not	4.Any
31.	breakfast so I'm very hur	ngry.	
1.didn't have	2.don't have	3. haven't	4.hadn't
32. Why do you have	e some cake	an ice-cream?	
1. because of	f 2.instead	3.instead of	4.because
33. These shirts are r	made cot	ton.	
1. from	2.by	3. for	4.of
34. Do you prefer ha	rd eggs or soft	?	
1. ones	2.one	3. lt	4.them
35. My sister isn't go	od her	work.	
1. in	2.by	3. at	4.with
36. Are there any ora	anges in the refrigerator?	No, I'm sorry, they ar	en't
1. some	2.any	3. ones	4.none
37. She	London at the moment		
1. is visiting	2.visits	3. will visit	4.visited
38. There are	ball-point pens or	n the table.	
1.many of	2.lot of	3.lots of	4.a lot
39. Can you come?	/es, I'd t	O.	
1. want	2.love	3. liked	4.hope
40.The story took pla	ace in the	century.	
1. nineteenth	2. nineteenth	3.nineteen	4.ninteen
Reading Comprehe	osion		
	e following passage and	then choose the h	est answer for
each qu		then choose the b	est answer for
•	litan Police may not be a	able to cut down crim	no and accidents
'	•		
_	e year as Interior Minister	wants because they	are short or men
and equipment.	ima and accidents may n	o.t	bacausa of
	ime and accidents may n		because of
	ne shortage of men and e	•	1
i reduce	2 Increase	5.annouce	4.choose

42.	Thailand has a very h	igh road accident rate.	Every year, many	y people die from		
	careless or selfish driving. Many crashes are caused because the drivers have drunk					
	too much alcohol. To m	nake them cut out the	drinking is difficu	lt to do but to keep		
	them off the road is eas	ier.				
	Question: Many peop	ole die in road accident	ts because of			
	1. stupidity	2. Carelessness	3.height	4.rate		
43.	His Majesty the King re	ecently visited the stud	dents in the Nort	heast of Thailand.		
٦	The students do their ho	mework by painting. Pa	ainting doesn't d	lo harm to anybody		
	Question: This school	l is popular for	schoo	ol.		
		2. Dancing				
(NO.	44-47)					
	Wine has been a pop	oular drink with meals	or for celebratio	ns in many parts of		
the v	vorld for years. It is made	e from grapes.				
	Just recently, wine ha	as been in the news. A	merican doctors	have begun to say		
caref	ully that drinking a smal					
		want people to				
alcoh	nolic. However, they					
	wine are less likely to_					
good	, have been recorded	in many songs and st	cories over the c	centuries. Wine has		
alway	ys been a drink often tal	ken with meals or feast	ts.			
44.	1.do your duty	2.do yo	our good			
	3.do the dishes	4.do ha	arm to you			
45.	1.find fault with	2.drop	in on			
	3.get along with	4.do av	vay with			
46.	1.have found out	2.have	fallen off			
	3.have filled in	4.have	fallen through			
47.	1.die out	2.die fr	om			
	3.die away	4.die of	f			
(NO.	48-51)					
	Today many countries	s have less water than	they need. Early	in the next		
centu	ury, a third of the world'	s nations will be perma	anently short of	water. Where are		
	sources of water? As for	·	•			
are	49		,			

	we are talking ab	out as much water	as we can from	rivers.	
Polluti	on50	to much of the rest	·		
	Desalinating sea v	water is a possible s	source but it cos	ts ten times	as much to
make.	Thus, we have to_	51the	expenses.		
48.	1.cut down		2.cut out		
	3.cut off		4.cut through		
49.	1.dying away		2.dying of		
	3.dying down		4.dying out		
50.	1.does over		2.does business	5	
	3.does harm		4.does good		
51.	1.get back		2.figure up		
	3.get behind		4.figure out		
(NO. 5	2-60)				
	In families with a	n only child, parent	s often worry	52	_the children
might l	be lonely or unab	le to adapt themse	lves53	_their friends.	The
sugges	tions on54	_to help them are	the following:-	Let them	_55a pet
as a fri	end,56	they can learn to b	e responsible	57ca	are of it.
	- Encourage the	em58ir	n sports or other	useful activi	ties.
	- Don't be too	quick to interfere v	vith59	problems	. Give them
	opportunity t	o work things out_	60		
52.	1.whether		2.when		
	3.what		4.where		
53.	1.with		2.to		
	3.by		4.along		
54.	1.why		2.how		
	3.what		4.when		
55.	1.keeping		2.to keep		
	3.keep		4.kept		
56.	1.so that		2.though		
	3.however		4.because of		
57.	1.for take		2.to be taking		
	3.to taking		4.for taking		

58.	1.to take part		2.taking part		
	3.to taking parts		4.to take the part		
59.	1.they		2.their		
	3.theirs		4.them		
60.	1.theirs		2.them		
	3.they		4.themselves		
(NO	61-67)				
(IVO.		ocially the teepage	ers consider the World C	Tun a great	
conce		,		Lup a great	
			attention to each	tournaments de	
			are not so popular. The		
			the gamblers. Som		
			uch more in betting		
team	i. Some teams play i	witn67tric	ks that I can't stand wa	tcning them.	
61.	1.give	2.pay	3.take	4.get	
62.	1.because	2.although	3.despile	4.therefore	
63.	1.as well as	2.and	3.but also	4.together with	
64.	1.a lot	2.much	3.more	4.most	
65.	1.lost	2.loss	3.lose	4.loose	
66.	1.at	2.on	3.to	4.of	
67.	1.so much	2.so many	3.too much	4.too many	
Direc	ctions : Put these se	entences into the	correct order. (NO. 68	-69)	
	1.She telephoned every store in town, but nobody had seen them.2.Yesterday my grandma couldn't find her glasses.				
	3.Last night, while cooking dinner, she found them in her apron pocket.				
	-	•	ner purse while shopping	•	
	1. 2-4-1-3	2. 3-1-2-4	3. 2-1-3-4	4.2-4-3-1	
69.					
	1.I'd go with you, but I want to finish this novel. 2.Really? I wish to have a look.				
	ŕ		w in her back yard.		
	1. 2-1-3	2. 3-2-1	3. 1-2-3	4. 1-3-2	
	1. 2 1 3	2. 2 2 1	J. 1 Z J	1. 1 J Z	

70.	70. How Many words are wrongly spelt in this sentence?						
	"When the I saw the supervisor's report, she desided to postpone typing is						
	144ntil the next d	ay"					
	1. 2	2. 3	3. 4	4.5			
Comr	munication. (No.71-8	30)					
Direct	tions: Complete the	following conv	ersation by choosing	the correct choice			
	below.						
71. W	hich sentence does t	he host usually	say when a guest is le	eaving the party?			
	The guest: I'm	afraid it's time to	say goodbye now.				
	The host:	·					
	1.Can't you stay a	little longer?	2.Yes, it's too late r	now.			
	3. Goodbye.		4. You should have	reached home by now.			
72. Yo	ou get lost in London	, So you approa	ch a stranger to ask fo	r your direction.			
٧	Vhat would you say?	?					
	You:		·				
	A stranger: Sorr	y, I can't tell you	ı. I'm a stranger here	myself.			
	1.I'm lost. Please show me the way to my home.						
	2.Excuse me, where are you going?						
	3.Excuse me, where	e is my house?					
	4.1'm sorry to troub	ole you, but coul	d you tell me how to	get to the East End?			
73. W	hen a customer is in	a restaurant and	a waiter come to att	end him.			
W	hat would the waite	•					
	The waiter: Go	ood morning	·				
			hink I'll start with son	ne orange juice			
	f	ollowed by corn	flakes.				
	1.What do you war	nt to order?	2.What do y	ou like to eat?			
	3. What would you	like to have, sir	4. What do y	ou want, sir?			
74. W	hen you enter a store	e, the clerk com	e to serve you, but yo	ou have no intention to			
b	uy anything. What w	ould you say?					
	The clerk: May	I help you sir (m	na'am)?				
	You:	·					
	1.No, of course not		2.I'm just looking ar	ound, thank you.			
	3.No, thank you.		4.No, you may not.				

75.	You want to change the time you arranged to	meet your friend, Bob, You phone
	him and say, "".	
	1. Sorry Bob, you've got to give me more	time.
	2. Bob, you stood me up. What about tom	orrow?
	3. Sorry Bob, I have to see you more often.	
	4. Bob, I can't make it at 2 o'clock. Are you	ı free at 4?
76.	Your friend has changed her hair style. You cor	mpliment her on her appearance
	by saying "".	
	1. It really looks at you.	2. You look terrific.
	3. You look strange indeed!	4. What have you done now?
77.	A friend is walking with you along the pavemer	nt. You see he is about to step in
	a puddle of water and say "	"
	1. Look up!	2. Look out!
	3. Step along!	4. Step over!
78.	Interviewer: "What does your father do?"	
	Interviewee: "".	
	1. He's a very hard working man.	2. He's doing his work carefully.
	3. He's the manager of a bank.	4. He has a very large family.
79.	Peter: "?"	
	John: "I think he has a flat tyre."	
	1. How many tyres do we have?	2. What's wrong with you?
	3. Which kind of tyre do we have?	4. What's the matter?
80.	Sarah: Oops! I've broken your glass.	
	Ken: Don't worry, dear.	<u>_</u> ·
	1.I haven't got any.	2. Have you got a new cup?
	3.I have got another one.	4. Is it a new cup?
81.	Paul:	
	Ben: I borrowed Anne's book.	
	1.Whose book will you buy?	2.Where is your book?
	3.Is there Anne's book on the shelf?	4.Whose book did you borrow?
82.	Anne: I'm hungry	
	Jane: There is some soup and a sandwich.	
	1. Will you go to the market?	2. Can I open the fridge?
	3. Is there anything in the kitchen?	4. Where are my sandwiches?

83.	Kim:	Where were yo	u last holiday?		
	Nancy	:			
	Kim:	How was it?			
	Nancy	: It was exciting.	I saw a lot of an	ncient objects.	
	1.I did	n't go to the cin	ema. 2	.I was at the museum.	
	3.1 go	to the gym.	4	.I was at the theatre wi	th my parents.
84.	Joe: I	was caught in tra	ffic.	·	
	Ann: Y	'es. A bus ran int	o a car.		
		1. Do you get u	ıp late?		
		2. There weren	't any car on the	e road.	
		3. Did the taxi o	driver drive very	fast?	
		4. Was there ar	accident near t	the school?	
85.	Ben:	The children ar	e very quiet. Wh	nat	?
	Linda:	They	some	e paper.	
	1. do 1	they do, cut		2. Do they doing,	, are cutting
	3. are	they doing, are o	cutting	4. They are doing	g, cut
Voc	abulary.				
	•	hoose the corre	ct word for the	following sentences.	(No 86-95)
		will be		-	(110.00 /3)
	1.food		2.meal	3.drinks	
		eshments			
87. I			ith his grandfath	ner in spite of the age	
	between	3	3.0		
	1.spac	e .	2.division	3.separation	4.gap
88.	·			for dishonesty	3 1
	1.put			3.resigned	4.retired
89	The salt th			d is a	
	1.meta			al 3.mineral	
	4.subs	tance			
90. I	Everybody	/ hin	n on the standa	rd of his performance.	
				3.applauded	4.clapped
91. l	By now th	ne fruit had beco	me quite	and we had to	get rid of it.
	1.ruine			3.rotten	

92. Far from being rough who	en he played with sm	aller children, h	e was always
surprisingly	·		
1.gentle	2.sweet	3.patient	4.careful
93. Short sight can be	by the use of	suitable glasse	S.
1.fixed	2.corrected	3.improved	4.reduced
94. Have you forgotten the _	you made	yesterday with	my secretary to have
the meeting in my office	??		
1.appointment	2.arrangement	3.decision	4.suggestion
95. Before there were factori	es, people used to _	woo	l into clothes in
their own homes.			
1.spin	2.weave	3.knit	4.manufacture
Directions: Choose the corr	ect meaning of the	<u>underlined wor</u>	ds in the sentences
(No.96-100)			
96. He <u>passed away</u> yesterd	ay.		
1.died 2	.was born	3.was ill	4.recovered
97. This must be obvious to	everybody.		
1.rude 2	.honest	3.clear	4.complicated
98. We'll <u>forward</u> this messa	age upon his return.		
1.send	2.deliver	3.receive	4.1 and 2
99. He is <u>loyal</u> to his wife.			
1.faithful	2.rough	3.raw	4.dishonest
100. An <u>awful</u> accident happ	ened here yesterday.		
1.good	2.pleasant	3.nice	4.bad
*********	·*************************************	·************	*******

<u>DIRECTIONS</u>: <u>Circle the letters that should be capitalized.</u>

1. W: Hey, john. Are you going to kelly's party on saturday night?

M: Yes, I am. Do you have her address?

W: Yeah. It's 32 evergreen street.

2. M: Hi, jane. Where are you off to?

W: Hi, mitch. I'm heading to the drake building for a job interview with king oil company.

3. W: Hi, bill. Have you chosen a costume for the halloween party yet?

M: Yeah. I'm going as king arthur. How about you?

W: Cool. I'm going as a princess. We should go together.

4. W: Excuse me; you look familiar. Aren't you in art history 405?

M: No' but I think we're in the same english literature class.

W: That's right – with dr. bauman.

M: Yes. Have you finished reading the adventures of huckleberry finn?

W: I've read it several times. It's one of my favorite novels.

<u>DIRECTIONS</u>: <u>Complete the sentences with the correct idioms from the box.</u> ***Change the forms of the verbs if necessary.

walk on eggshells	bite off more than you can chew
spill the beans	take it with a grain of salt
kill two birds with one stone	go back to square one

1.	My boss rejected my plan for the project, so I have to
2.	Dad's gift for Mom was supposed to be a surprise, but my little brother accidentally
3.	There's a lot of bad information on the Internet, so if you read something online, always
4.	People tend to around Victor because he has
	a very quick temper.

5. You tutor kids, play for the soccer team, and r	now you have a part-time job?
I'm worried thatyou may have	
6. By walking to the bank, I can	
– open a new account and get my daily exerc	cise.
DIRECTIONS: Match the idioms with their defin	nitions.
1. out of the blue	a. to have memorized
2. a dime a dozen	b. hope of an end to a bad situation
3. to know by heart	c. a large number and variety of thing
4. no ifs, ands, or buts	d. common; easy to find
5. light at the end of the tunnel	e. without doubt or question
6. everything but the kitchen sink	f. completely unexpectedly

Sentence Structure

Circle the co	irect ariswers.		
1. I cannot be	elieve that	snowing outside! It	doesn't usually snow in August.
a. it	b. there's	c. it's	d. there
2	_ was a loud noise com	ning from the living	room.
a. There	b. There is	c. It's	d. I
3. Bruce is go	ing shopping	_ bread. We need	it for dinner.
a. buys	b. buy	c. buying	d. to buy
4. Max finishe	ed reading his book last	night,	he watched a movie on TV tonight.
a. so	b. but	c. yet	d. then
5	_, Steve called the resta	aurant to make a re	eservation; he wouldn't be
able to eat	there otherwise.		
	a. After to leave work	b. <i>A</i>	After leaving work
	c. Leaving after to wo	rk d. A	After work left
Find the mis	takes and rewrite ther	n on the line.	
Thank you s	so much for your wor	nderful gift. I am I	ooking forward to wearing the
beautiful nec	klace often. After havir	ng seen it in the sto	ore, I was pleased to receiving it
as a gift. Whe	en you come visiting ne	ext month, I will b	be sure to wear it! It is a festival
_			en as well. Do you know if the
			per cleaning techniques. I don't
want it to gei	t dirty. I want this neckl	ace to tast a tong ti	me.
1			
2		-	
3		\rightarrow	

Choose the answer that correctly uses preparatory it or there.

1. Is there anything fun going on this weekend?

- (A) It is a concert in the park. (B) The park concert is over there.
- (C) There is a concert in the park. (D) It is in the park there.

2. What time is it?

- (A) It is 9:00 a.m. in the morning. (B) Class, it is at 9:00 a.m.
- (C) There is morning time. (D) There class starts at 9 a.m.

3. Do you know where a shoe store is?

- (A) There is the shoe stop. (B) There is one next door.
- (C) I know it is here. (D) It is next to my house.

Identify the type of phrase that is underlined in each sentence.

4. Most of her classmates were from Asia.

- (A) Prepositional phrase (B) Gerund phrase
- (C) Infinitive phrase (D) Participle phrase

5. Our mother went to the store to buy some food.

- (A) Prepositional phrase (B) Gerund phrase
- (C) Infinitive phrase (D) Participle phrase

Choose the sentence that correctly combines the clauses.

6. Lisa loves to swim / She joined the swim team

- (A) Lisa loves joining swim teams.
- (B) Lisa loves swimming, and joining swim teams.
- (C) Lisa loves swimming and swim teams.
- (D) Lisa loves to swim, so she joined the swim team.

7. Because he didn't feel well / He went to bed early

- (A) He didn't feel well because he went to bed early.
- (B) Because he went to bed early, he didn't feel well.
- (C) Because he didn't feel well, he went to bed early.
- (D) He went to bed, early because he didn't feel well.

8. He did poorly on the test / Even though he studied very hard

- (A) He did poorly on the test even though he studied very hard.
- (B) He did poorly, even though he studied very hard on the test.
- (C) Even though he studied very hard he did poorly on the test.
- (D) Even though, he studied very hard, he did poorly, on the test.

- 9. Despite not like vegetables / He ate everything on his plate to be polite
 - (A) Despite not liking vegetables he ate everything on his plate to be polite.
 - (B) He ate everything on his plate to be polite despite not liking vegetables.
 - (C) Despite eating everything on his plate, he still didn't like eating vegetables.
 - (D) He ate everything on his plate, to be polite, and despite not liking vegetables.
- 10. She couldn't go on her trip / Since Beth lost her passport / She was very upset
 - (A) She lost her passport; she was very upset, since Beth couldn't go on her trip.
 - (B) Since Beth lost her passport she couldn't go on her trip but she was very upset.
 - (C) She lost her passport, and she was very upset, since Beth couldn't go on her trip.
 - (D) Since Beth lost her passport, she couldn't go on her trip, and she was very upset.

Connectors

Circle the correct	answers.		
1. The children saw	/ birds, snakes,	fish at the zoo t	his afternoon.
a. and a	b. but a	c. and	d. but
2. Our class learned	d how to bake, how to se	ew, and	_ cook.
a. how to	b. how	c. to	d
3. The boy was cau	ight running in the hall; _	, he had	d to stay after school.
a. otherwise	b. consequent	ly c. still	d. moreover
4. Ryan speaks Rus	sian, while John	Italian. Liz spea	aks both!
a. to speak	b. speaks	c. does speak	d. spoke
5. Meg has a new b	oike, I asked	her if she wanted	to ride bikes together.
a. However	b. Afterward	c. Then	d. Therefore
Find the mistakes	and rewrite them on th	e line.	
am in charge of parto help her in the close boxes. We paway things like egilike peanut butter,	cking up my clothes, toy kitchen. Otherwise, I he acked not only glasses a gs, milk, and juice. Howey	rs, and my compurelped wrap up gland dishes but allower, we decided to uncooked noodle	ter. My mother asked me asses, secure plates, and so some food! We threw save and wrapped things s. Afterward, we will help
		·	
3	\longrightarrow	·	

Choose the sentence that correctly fixes the mistake in the sample sentence.

- 1. She ran quickly and silent down the road.
 - (A) She runs quickly and silent down the road.
 - (B) She ran quickly and silently down the road.
 - (C) She ran guick and silently down the road.
 - (D) She ran quick, silent and down the road.
- 2. They watched a movie and going ice skating.
 - (A) They will go to the movies and ice skating.
 - (B) They watched a movie and went ice skating.
 - (C) They watched a movie and will go ice skating.
 - (D) They will watch and go to the movies and ice skating.
- 3. I bought hat, ball, and glove today.
 - (A) I bought a hat, a ball, and a glove today.
 - (B) I bought a hat, a ball, and glove today.
 - (C) I bought a hat, ball, and a glove today.
 - (D) I bought hat, ball, and a glove today.
- 4. We packed our bags, were loading the car, and had driven off.
 - (A) We packed our bags, loaded the car, and drove off.
 - (B) We were packing our bags, loaded the car, and driven off.
 - (C) We were packing our bags and loaded the car, and driven off.
 - (D) We packed our bags and had loaded the car, and driving off.
- 5. He is neither working on his paper nor video games.
 - (A) He is working neither playing video game nor papers.
 - (B) He is neither working nor playing papers nor video games.
 - (C) He is neither working on his paper nor playing video games.
 - (D) He is working neither on his paper nor playing video games.

Choose the conjunctive adverb that goes best in the blank.		
6. I don't want to go to school today;	, there's a big test, so	
I must go.		
(A) however	(B) therefore	
(C) likewise	(D) accordingly	

7. He ha	is been very rude too me lately;	, I've stopped talking
to hir	m.	
	(A) afterward	(B) moreover
	(C) consequently	(D) indeed
8. They	all got good grades on their tests;	, they got an award.
	(A) however	(B) therefore
	(C) similarly	(D) also
Choose	the answer that correctly uses a conjunc	ctive adverb to link
the two	sentences.	
9. She lo	oves to run. She likes to swim.	
()	A) She loves to run. And, also, she likes to	swim.
(8	B) She, also, loves to run. She likes to swim	n.
((C) She loves to run. Also likes to swim.	
])	D) She loves to run. Also, she likes to swim	ı.
10. It did	dn't snow today. I didn't need my coat.	
()	A) It didn't snow therefore, didn't need my	/ coat.
(8	B) It didn't snow. Therefore, I didn't need r	my coat.
((C) It didn't, therefore, snow. I didn't need I	my coat.
])	D) It didn't snow. I didn't need therefore m	ny coat.
~~~~~~		

# Wishes and Conditional Sentences

Circle the correct	answers.		
1. Tim wishes that	his sister let	him play on her comput	ter.
a. will	b. has	c. would	d. can
2. I wish my grandp	parents could	seen me graduate	e from high school.
a. has	b. have	c. been	d. may
3 you	don't wake up on	time, you will miss the b	ous.
a. If	b. Where	c. Whether	d. Of
4. They	_ have won the gar	me if they had practiced	more.
a. would	b. can	c. will	d. were
5. I could go swimi	ming if I	remembered to bring r	ny swim suit.
a. having	b. has	c. have	d. had
	and rewrite them		ad gone to school longer.
Today, he is taking restaurant. If they her brother would	g Nikki to the park leave the park at 4 I spend more time norrow, he will take	c. After going to the pa :30, they get a good tab with her. He is a very b	ork, they plan to go to a le there. Nikki wishes that busy person. If he finishes e spends more time with
2			

Ch	noose the word that goes	best in the l	olank(s).		
1.	go to	the perform	ance tonight.		
	(A) I wish I had	(B) I v	(B) I wish was		
	(C) I wish I would	(D) I v	wish I could		
2.	Samantha	he	stop picking on her.		
	(A) wishes, would		(B) wishes, had		
	(C) wished, could		(D) wished, were		
3.	We all wish it	so c	old outside.		
	(A) couldn't be	(B) w	ouldn't be		
	(C) weren't	(D) h	asn't been		
4.	If she doesn't take her r	medicine,	•		
	(A) she does get sick		(B) she will get sick		
	(C) she do get sick		(D) she is getting sick		
5.	People work harder				
	(A) if their boss might nice	e to them	(B) if their boss will be nice to them		
	(C) if their boss is going to	be nice to th	nem (D) if their boss is nice to them		
6.	if I w	ere you.			
	(A) I hadn't registered for	that class	(B) I wouldn't register for that class		
	(C) I couldn't register for	that class	(D) I weren't register for that class		
7.	, where would you go?				
	(A) If you travel anywhere	5	(B) If you would travel anywhere		
	(C) If you could travel an	ywhere	(D) If you had traveled anywhere		
8.	I might not have gotten	sick			
	(A) if I had worn my coat		(B) if I am wearing my coat		
	(C) if I wore my coat		(D) if I did wear my coat		
9.	, you	would have s	seen them before they left.		
	(A) If you would come so	oner	(B) If you had been able to come sooner		
	(C) If you were going to c	ome sooner	(D) If you could come sooner		
10	. If you	a little bit ol	der, you come with us.		
	(A) were, could		(B) are, might could		
	(C) were able to be wou	ld have	(D) had been, would		

# Noun Clauses

Circle the correct a	answers.		
1. Did you know	my	brother got a new job last wee	ek?
a. when	b. that	c. or not	d. then
2. They knew that t	he animal wa	as rare not that it v	vas the last one living.
a. but	b. so	c. and	d. or
3. Kevin didn't reme	ember	or not his father was picl	king him up.
a. if	b. that	c. whether	d. so
4. Liz wasn't sure _	ha	nd called her. They didn't leave	e a message.
a. why	b. who	c. how	d. where
5. I don't know	man	y questions will be on the test	•
a. how	b. so	c. when	d. what
Find the mistakes	and rewrite t	them on the line.	
spaceship. It doesn pretend anywhere. make too much no	't matter who My older sis ise, my mom utside. I don't	whether I am an astronaut. I image ther I am in my bedroom or ters complain that I make too tells me to play outside. It is t know if I will be an astronaut	in the living room. I can much noise. Whether I easy to imagine I am in when I am an adult. But
1			
2			<u> </u>
3.		$\rightarrow$	

Choose the option that correctly adds the word(s) in parentheses to the sentence.

- 1. They believe Santa Claus is real. (that)
  - (A) They that believe Santa Claus is real.
  - (B) That they believe Santa Claus is real.
  - (C) They believe that Santa Claus is real.
  - (D) They believe Santa Claus that is real.
- 2. I don't know she is coming. (whether or not)
  - (A) I don't know she whether or not is coming.
  - (B) I don't whether or not know she is coming.
  - (C) I don't know she is whether or not coming.
  - (D) I don't know whether or not she is coming.
- 3. She isn't sure she can finish the race. (if, or not)
  - (A) She isn't sure if she can finish the race or not.
  - (B) She isn't sure she can finish if the race if or not.
  - (C) She isn't sure if or not she can finish the race.
  - (D) If She isn't sure she can finish or not the race.
- 4. Last night I ______ I could fly. (dream)
  - (A) dreamed if

(B) dreamed whether

(C) dreamed that

- (D) dreamed so
- 5. I fear the tiger will escape, and it will chase me. (that)
  - (A) I fear the tiger will escape, that and it will chase me.
  - (B) I fear the tiger will escape, and it that will chase me.
  - (C) I fear the tiger that will escape, and it will chase me.
  - (D) I fear that the tiger will escape, and it will chase me.

Choose the option that correctly restates the question by using a noun clause.

- 6. What time should we go to the movies?
  - (A) We should go to the movies at when?
  - (B) Do you know what time we should go to the movies?
  - (C) Should we go to the movies at what time?
  - (D) What time, do you think, should we go to the movies?

# 7. When is Gina going to practice?

- (A) Gina does know she is going to practice?
- (B) Do you know when Gina is going to practice?
- (C) When do you know if Gina is going to practice?
- (D) You know when Gina is going to practice, do you?

# 8. Where are my documents?

- (A) Where my documents are, tell me.
- (B) Tell me my documents are where.
- (C) My documents are where, tell me.
- (D) Tell me where my documents are.

# 9. Where did she get that dress from?

- (A) I don't know where she got this dress from.
- (B) I don't know where she get that dress from.
- (C) I don't know she got this dress from where.
- (D) I don't know where did she get that dress from.

# 10. What is missing from the store?

- (A) Tell me the store is missing from what.
- (B) Tell me what store is missing from.
- (C) Tell me what is missing from the store.
- (D) Tell me what the store is missing from.

# Comparisons and More Conditionals

Circle the correct	t answers.		
1. If it	_ Mika's assistance, Ron v	vouldn't have lear	ned his lines.
a. would be	b. weren't for	c. able to	d. have to
2. If I had earned	enough over the summe	r, I bo	ught a new computer.
a. could have	b. should of	c. supposed to	d. would
3. If you eat all th	nat candy, you	going to be sick	tomorrow.
a. be	b. will	c. are	d. is
4. Rob was trapez	ze artist. He could fly thro	ough the air	a bird.
a. if	b. like	c. can	d. whether
5 Rog	er left earlier, he would h	nave arrived to wor	k on time.
a. Having	b. Were	c. Without	d. Had
Find the mistake	es and rewrite them on	the line.	
have found out t weekend, I will v long as the weat	that she was on vacation visit her then. I am going ther is nice, I will take multing in and watch a	Provide that she to spend the weekly dog for a walk is movie on TV. Sho	Has I not called, I wouldn't is back from vacation next ekend at home instead. As in the park. If the weather uld Reese call, I will invite
1		→	
2		<b></b>	
3	_		

Choose the option that correctly replaces the *if* clause.

- 1. If there hadn't been so much traffic, I wouldn't have been late.
  - (A) Because of the traffic (B) Shouldn't have been late but
  - (C) But for the traffic, (D) Were there traffic
- 2. I'm going to the museum on Saturday if anyone wants to come.
  - (A) but for anyone coming. (B) had not anyone come.
  - (C) were anyone want to come. (D) should anyone want to come.
- 3. If she hadn't watched the horror movie, she wouldn't have had a bad dream.
  - (A) With not watching the horror movie
  - (B) Should be not watch the horror movie
  - (C) Had she not watched the horror movie
  - (D) Were she not watching the horror movie

Choose the option that correctly adds the word(s) in parentheses to the sentence.

- 4. Mmm, this vegetarian bacon tastes real bacon. (like)
  - (A) Mmmm, this vegetarian bacon tastes like real bacon.
  - (B) Mmmm, this vegetarian bacon tastes real like bacon.
  - (C) Mmmm, like this vegetarian bacon tastes real bacon.
  - (D) Mmmm, this vegetarian like bacon tastes real bacon.
- 5. This painting looks a five-year-old made it. (as if)
  - (A) This painting looks a five-year-old as if made it.
  - (B) This painting looks as if a five-year-old made it.
  - (C) This painting looks a five-year-old made as if it.
  - (D) This painting as if looks a five-year-old made it.
- 6. He keeps working hard, he'll get the promotion. (as long as)
  - (A) He keeps working hard, he'll get as long as the promotion.
  - (B) He keeps working hard, he'll get the promotion as long as.
  - (C) As long as he keeps working hard, he'll get the promotion.
  - (D) He keeps working hard, as long as he'll get the promotion.
- 7. If they don't find their tickets, they're not able to come in. (going to be)
  - (A) If they don't find their tickets, they're not going to be able to come in.
  - (B) If they don't find their tickets, they're not going to be come in.
  - (C) If they don't find their tickets, they're not be able to going to come in.
  - (D) If they're not going to find their tickets, they're not be able to come in.

# 8. If you go by the store, please pick me up some lotion. (happen to)

- (A) If you go by the store, please happen to pick me up some lotion.
- (B) If you happen to go by the store, please pick me up some lotion.
- (C) If you go by the store, please pick me up happen to some lotion.
- (D) If you go by the store, happen to please pick me up some lotion.

# 9. If I come to France, would you be excited? (were to)

- (A) If I come to France, were you to be excited?
- (B) Were to I come to France, would you be excited?
- (C) If I come to France were to, would you be excited?
- (D) If I were to come to France, would you be excited?

# 10. I asked you out on a date, what would you say? (supposing)

- (A) I asked you out on a date, supposing what would you say?
- (B) Supposing I asked you out on a date, what would you say?
- (C) I asked you out on a date, what would you supposing say?
- (D) I asked you out on a date supposing, what would you say?

# **COMPARISON**

# Choose the best answer.

1.	he works,	ambitious he was.
	1. Much as / the less	2. The more / the least
	3. The more / the less	4. The most / the less
2.	I ran than sh	ne.
	1. more quicklier	2. more quickly
	3. quickest	4. more quick
3.	Which is the train to London that goe	s, please?
	1. the fastest	2. faster
	3. the most fast	4. more fast
4.	A : "Her English is very good."	
	B : "I think she is	most of the students here."
	1. the smarter than	2. smarter
	3. the smartest of	4. smarter than
5.	A: "Why did you give up living in yo	our flat?"
	B : "Each room was	a dog house."
	1. very small	2. so small as
	3. as small as	4. small as
6.	She has had frie	nds since she became poor.
	1. less 2. smaller	3. fewer 4. much
7.	Her essay is less	than yours.
	1. very interesting	2. more interesting
	3. interesting	4. much interesting
8.	My idea is the same as	
	1. my friend	2. my friend's
	3. that of my friends	4. of my friend
9.	Bangkok is bigger than	
	1. any city	2. any cities
	3. any other city	4. any other cities
10.	Supa is the most intelligent of	in the class.
	1. all the girls	2. all of the girl
	3. any other girl	4. all the other girls

11.	There are	glasses on	the table than on th	ne shelf.
	1. less	2. the least	3. the most	4. more
12.	We can go to Pat	taya on	petrol tha	n Hua-Hin.
	1. little	2. more	3. less	4. the least
13.	Jane has	Hel	en.	
	1. books	less than	2. books fev	ver than
	3. less bo	ooks than	4. fewer boo	oks than
14.	John is	than his	brother.	
	1. strong	more	2. very stror	nger
	3. much	stronger	4. more stro	onger
15.	Which is the	of the	e two girls, Suda or S	Sunee?
	1. old	2. older	3. oldest	4. more older
16.	Mike didn't feel v	vell so we gave him	t	o do than you.
	1. fewer	works	2. less work	
	3. little w	rorks	4. least wor	k
17.	I have never lived	l in	than that on	e is.
	1. larger a	a house	2. a larger h	ouse
	3. a large	house more	4. the larger	house
18.	I have never own	ed	as the one	you gave me.
	1. as expe	ensive a ring	2. as expens	sive ring
	3. as a rir	ig expensive	4. as more e	expensive a ring
19.	John now weighs	the	he has ever	weighed.
	1. more	2. much	3. most	4. much more
20.	Mr. Noppadol is		man in this fa	actory.
	1. the mo	ost funniest	2. more fun	ny
	3. the mo	ost funnier	4. the funni	est
21.	Rob is the	of the ten	boys.	
	1. good	2. well	3. best	4. better
22.	Miss Universe is	the be	eautiful girl.	
	1. most	2. more	3. better	4. little

23. Anna has two sons. Nut is	, Nop is	
1. young / old	2. younger / older	
3. the youngest / the oldest	t 4. most young/most old	
24. In Thailand , April is the	. month of the year.	
1. colder 2. coldest	3. hotter 4. hottest	
25. Linda's dress is Nuch's	s dress.	
1. more pretty than	2. prettier than	
3. the most pretty	4. the prettiest	
26. The snake is the worr	n.	
1. shorter than	2. shortest than	
3. longer than	4. longest than	
27. He is my friend.		
1. more beautiful 2. better	3. best 4. faster	
28. This film is interesting than	n that one.	
1. very 2. much	3. most 4. more	
29. Art is of all subject.		
1. more easier	2. the easiest	
3. the most easy	4. easy than	
30. Her child must be one of the	children I knov	٧.
1. most happy	2. happiest	
3. more happy	4. happier	
31. Which sentence is not correct?		
1. This book is more expensi	ive than that one.	
2. Anong is as older as my s		
3. She always gets up earlier	than her husband.	
4. The Pacific is the largest o	ocean.	
32. Which sentence is not correct?		
1. My father is more healthy	,	
2. The exam was easier than	·	
3. New York is bigger than Ba		
4. Nipa is the oldest girl in o	ur class.	

#### 33. Which sentence is correct?

- 1. He is well today than he was yesterday.
- 2. He is as younger as I am.
- 3. They have much money than we.
- 4. This book is much more expensive than that one.

#### 34. Which sentence is not correct?

- 1. Dang doesn't have so much money as Dum.
- 2. There are few schools in Korat than in Ayudhaya.
- 3. The young man is sillier than the old man.
- 4. I am having my worst cold of the year.

#### 35. Which sentence is not correct?

- 1. Somsak's car is the same colour as mine.
- 2. The gold is more valuable than ruby.
- 3. Nid is friendlier than Ladda
- 4. Dang is more clever than his brother.

#### Make sentences. Use the superlative.

1	This is one of	the most advanced	machines in the world. (	(Tadvanced)
Ι.	11112 12 0116 01	the most advanced	i machines in the worth.	(Tauvaniceu)

$\circ$	O	_	□==:1:±:== :.		(, ====
/.	Our warehouse ha	S	Facilities ii	n the city.	(+ g000

- 4. This is ...... office in the building. (+bad)
- 5. ..... people work for us. (+ experienced)

# Underline the correct words.

- 1. The *most / more important* question is money.
- 2. This computer is *newer / more new* than that one
- 3. That's the **best / better** discount I can offer .
- 4. Good IT skills are the most *essential / essentialest* possible for this job.
- 5. I think this room is *more / most* convenient than that one

# Adverb Clauses

Circle the correct answers.			
1. The play will begin	everyone	e is in their seats.	
a. until	b. since	c. after	d. every time
2. The second	I saw Phil, he wa	as wearing a red and b	lue T-shirt.
a. time	b. while	c. soon	d. long
3 Randy	was new to the group	, he didn't know anyo	ne.
a. Due to	b. Because	c. Until	d. Unless
4. You should bring L	isa's necklace in	you see her at	the gym.
a. due	b. even	c. front	d. case
5. I want to take an a	rt class, S	ue wants to take a dar	nce class.
a. because	b. if	c. as though	d. whereas
Find the mistakes ar	nd rewrite them on tl	he line.	
_	_		As soon as it began to ad been swimming for
_			for lunch. We ate the
		·	ning, we had to let the
		would have let the do	3.
3	3,		
1		·	
2	_	<b>→</b>	
2			

Ch	oose the word or phrase th	nat goes best in the blank.
1.	they fir	nd the map, it will already be too late.
	(A) By the time	(B) As long as
	(C) The first	(D) Every time
2.	we wen	t out on a date was much better than the first two.
	(A) Until	(B) As soon as
	(C) As long as	(D) The third time
3. 1	My grandfather has not vis	ited my family my little brother
wa	s born.	
	(A) after	(B) since
	(C) whenever	(D) the first
4.	, his par	ents wouldn't let him go to the party.
	(A) Due to the fact that	he hasn't any homework
	(B) Because he didn't d	o his homework
	(C) As long as he is done	e with his homework
	(D) Since he finished his	homework
5.	They don't have to practic	e tomorrow
	(A) due to the fact socc	er season will end
	(B) since the soccer sea	son is over
	(C) as long as they don'	t practice anymore
	(D) because they are pr	acticing tomorrow
6.	they are	e able to get the car running, they still won't be able
	to win the race.	
	(A) In case	(B) Unless
	(C) Only if	(D) Even if
7.	she find	ds an apartment, she will have to move in with
	her parents.	
	(A) Only if	(B) If
	(C) In case	(D) Unless
8.	I brought extra water	there isn't any at the cabin.
	(A) in case	(B) only if
	(C) even if	(D) whether or not

9 Greg doesn	't work hard, he keeps getting promotions at work
(A) Even though	(B) Only if
(C) Because	(D) Whereas
10. Sally loves to exercise,	her husband, Billy, does not.
(A) only if	(B) unless
(C) whereas	(D) in case
****	******

# Reduced Clauses

		eddeed elddses	
Circle the corre	ect answers.		
1. That woman,	help wa	lking across the street, is r	ny grandmother.
a. needing	b. needs	c. what needs	d. needed
2. My relatives _	in the Un	ited States all live in Chica	ago.
a. live	b. living	c. lived	d. lives
3 d	riving to school, I sav	v an accident in the other	lane.
a. Because	b. If	c. While	d. Go
4. After swimming, the couple out for lunch together.			er.
a. went	b. going	c. be	d. have
5. Max has been	upset since	the terrible news.	
a. heard	b. hears	c. hearing	d. hear
Find the mistakes and rewrite them on the line.			

Since eating breakfast, Bruce heard a loud noise. After going to investigate, he found the source of the noise. While trying to escape its yard, a dog got trapped in Bruce's yard. The dog was barking and yelping for help. The dog, a yellow Labrador which had been in Bruce's yard for a short time. The family living next door owned the dog. Bruce went to see his neighbors to bring back their dog. The woman living in the house answered the door and thanked Bruce for returning the dog. The fence, damaging by

1	
2	
3.	$\rightarrow$

the dog, needs to be repaired.

Choose the option that correctly reduces the adjective clause to an adjective phrase. If the clause cannot be reduced, choose (D).

- 1. The doctor who is doing the operation is a very gifted surgeon.
  - (A) The doctor who is a very gifted surgeon does operations.
  - (B) The doctor doing the operation is a very gifted surgeon.
  - (C) The doctor is doing operations and is a very gifted surgeon.
  - (D) --
- 2. The woman who is coming from Cambodia sells cooking products.
  - (A) The woman who is coming sells cooking products from Cambodia.
  - (B) The woman coming from Cambodia sells cooking products.
  - (C) The woman is coming from Cambodia to sell cooking products.
  - (D) --
- 3. The people who I'm going camping with are photographers.
  - (A) The people going camping are photographers.
  - (B) The people who are camping with are photographers.
  - (C) The people I'm going camping with are photographers.
  - (D) --
- 4. The food that you ordered will be here soon.
  - (A) The food ordered will be here soon.
  - (B) The food ordered by you will be here soon.
  - (C) The food that's been ordered for you will be here soon.
  - (D) --
- 5. The lion that escaped from the zoo was caught.
  - (A) The lion escaped the zoo and was caught.
  - (B) The lion escaping from the zoo was caught.
  - (C) The lion who escaped from the zoon was caught.
  - (D) --

Choose the option that correctly reduces the adverb clause to an adverb phrase. If the clause cannot be reduced, choose (D).

- 6. Before we went to school this morning, we stopped for coffee.
  - (A) Before went to school this morning, we stopped for coffee.
  - (B) Before we went to school this morning, stopped for coffee.
  - (C) Before going to school this morning, we stopped for coffee.
  - (D) -

# 7. While I was teaching the class, the fire alarm rang.

- (A) While teaching class, the fire alarm rang.
- (B) While teaching class, I rang the fire alarm.
- (C) While the class was taught, the fire alarm rang.
- (D) --

# 8. Before he was resting, Jason was cutting the grass.

- (A) Before resting, Jason was cutting the grass.
- (B) Before he rested, Jason was cutting the grass.
- (C) Before Jason rested, he was cutting the grass.
- (D) --

### 9. After she saw the movie, she decided to read the book.

- (A) After the movie, she decided to read the book.
- (B) After seeing the movie, she decided to read the book.
- (C) After she saw the movie, she decided to read the book.
- (D) --

# 10. While he was waiting at the bus stop, his dad saw a car accident.

- (A) While waiting at the bus stop, his dad saw a car accident.
- (B) While at the bus stop, his dad was seeing a car accident.
- (C) While he waited at the bus stop, his dad is seeing a car accident.
- (D) --

************************************

# Emphasis and Inversion

Circle the correct answers.					
1.	don't think your stayir	ng here is a good idea			
a. really	b. do	c. no	d. who		
2\	was said about the boy	's bad behavior. Ever	yone ignored it.		
a. Not one	b. Nobody	c. Nothing	d. No		
3 w	hen you apologize will	you be able to borro	ow the car again.		
a. Scarcely	b. Only	c. Since	d. Rarely		
4. No	had I walked in the	room than Martha ex	plained the situation.		
a. soon	b. barely	c. sooner	d. hardly		
5. I watched my	/ sister's kid. Only	did I realize h	now hard parenting was.		
a. do	b. one	c. ever	d. then		
Find the mista	kes and rewrite them	on the line.			
Millie and Lilly really enjoyed spending the weekend with their grandmother. They always have a good time at her house. They did none chores or homework during their stay. They played and baked with their grandmother. It wasn't after Sunday that their mother took them home. It was their mother which made the girls do their homework. No sooner had Millie begun her math homework than her pencil broke. Only after asking her mom for a new one was she able to continue. At no time did Millie and Lilly work on their homework together. They did different assignments.					

Choose the option that correctly combines the word(s) in parentheses with the incomplete sentence.

- 1. Student passed the algebra exam last week. (not one)
  - (A) Student passed the not one algebra exam last week.
  - (B) Student passed the algebra exam not one last week.
  - (C) Not one student passed the algebra exam last week.
  - (D) Student not one passed the algebra exam last week.
- 2. Was my art class, not my math class, I found to be the hardest. (it, that)
  - (A) That was my art class, not my math class, I found it to be the hardest.
  - (B) It was my art class, not my math class, I found that to be the hardest.
  - (C) That was my art class, not my math class, it I found to be the hardest.
  - (D) It was my art class, not my math class, that I found to be the hardest.
- 3. Seemed to care that the talent show had been canceled. (nobody)
  - (A) Seemed to care that the nobody talent show had been canceled.
  - (B) Seemed nobody to care that the talent show had been canceled.
  - (C) Nobody seemed to care that the talent show had been canceled.
  - (D) Seemed to care nobody that the talent show had been canceled.

Choose the option that correctly uses inversion to restate the sentence.

- 4. Right when we had sat down to eat, we got called back into work.
  - (A) We got called back into work just when we had sat down to eat.
  - (B) No sooner had we sat down to eat than we got called back into work.
  - (C) No sooner we had sat down to eat than we got called back into work.
  - (D) We had gotten called back into work just when we had sat down to eat.
- 5. If she had come to the concert with me, she'd have been able to come backstage.
  - (A) Had she come to the concert with me, she'd have been able to come backstage.
  - (B) Would have been able to come backstage had she come to the concert with me.
  - (C) She'd have been able to come backstage if she had come to the concert with me.
  - (D) If had she come to the concert with me, she'd have been able to come backstage.

#### 6. The tourists were never given permission to take pictures.

- (A) At no time were the tourists given permission to take pictures.
- (B) At no time were the tourists not given permission to take pictures.
- (C) The tourists were not given permission to take pictures at any time.
- (D) The tourists at any time were not given permission to take pictures.

## Choose the option that correctly adds a tag question to the sentence.

# 7. They aren't going to arrive on time.

- (A) They aren't going to arrive on time, will they?
- (B) They aren't going to arrive on time, are they?
- (C) They aren't going to arrive on time, don't they?
- (D) They aren't going to arrive on time, hadn't they?

#### 8. You ate all the leftover food.

- (A) You ate all the leftover food, didn't you?
- (B) You ate all the leftover food, weren't you?
- (C) You ate all the leftover food, won't you?
- (D) You ate all the leftover food, don't you?

#### 9. Her older brother will graduate soon.

- (A) Her older brother will graduate soon, isn't he?
- (B) Her older brother will graduate soon, won't he?
- (C) Her older brother will graduate soon, didn't he?
- (D) Her older brother will graduate soon, shouldn't he?

## 10. There are a lot more people coming.

- (A) There are a lot more people coming, isn't there?
- (B) There are a lot more people coming, aren't there?
- (C) There are a lot more people coming, won't there?
- (D) There are a lot more people coming, didn't there?

# Capitalization and Punctuation

circle the correct an	iswers.			
1. Kath often dreamed	d of traveling to	and Madrid in Spain.		
a. barcelona	b. Barcelona	c. A city	d. a City	
2. Tomorrow is Friday	. That means that the	weekend is coming so	on	
a. /	b. !	c. ?	d	
3. "Then my sister	is my bag!'"	Rachel told her cousi	n over the phone.	
a. said That	b. said	c. said 'that	d. said, 'That	
4. There is only	of the pie left.	We should share it.		
a. one, fourth	b. one-fourth	c. one fourth	d. one/fourth	
5. Bill is very intereste	ed in historical events	like the		
a. American Ci	ivil War	b. american civil War		
c. American ci	vil War	d. american civil war		
	nd rewrite them on th		th	
event will take place until 6:00 p.m. If you second half of the f entitles people to an	at the (new and imposed would like to participle will be collected all-inclusive event panic mug, and a T-shirt.	tival will be held on proved) Hyatt Regent I pate, send half of the the day before the ss. This includes[unlimed] Please include your s	Hotel from 10:00 a.m. fee by March 1 st . The event. Paying the fee lited tastings, a canvas hirt size / S, M, or L—	

## Choose the option that uses capitalization correctly.

- 1. mary and her father are leaving for italy on friday.
  - (A) Mary and her father are leaving for italy on Friday.
  - (B) Mary and her Father are leaving for Italy on friday.
  - (C) Mary and her father are leaving for Italy on Friday.
  - (D) Mary and her Father ara leaving for Italy on friday.

# 2. ms. holiday assigned of mice and men for us to read in our english class.

- (A) ms. Holiday assigned of mice and men for us to read in our English class.
- (B) Ms. Holiday assigned *Of Mice and Men* for us to read in our English class.
- (C) Ms. holiday assigned of Mice and Men for us to read in our English class.
- (D) Ms. Holiday assigned Of Mice and Men for us to read in our english class.

# 3. The st. lewis hospital is on james street.

- (A) The st. Lewis Hospital is on James street.
- (B) The st. Lewis Hospital is on James Street.
- (C) The St. lewis Hospital is on James street.
- (D) The St. Lewis Hospital is on James Street.

#### Choose the option that uses punctuation correctly.

- 4. The school is serving several types of fruit at lunch today apples oranges and grapes
  - (A) The school is serving several types of fruit at lunch today: apples, oranges, and grapes.
  - (B) The school is serving several types of fruit at lunch today, apples oranges and grapes.
  - (C) The school is serving several types of fruit at lunch today; apples, oranges, and grapes.
  - (D) The school is serving several types of fruit at lunch today apples, oranges, and grapes.

## 5. "I think he said I'm going to the store to get some butter"

- (A) "I think he said 'I'm going to the store to get some butter.'"
- (B) "I think he said, 'I'm going to the store to get some butter.'"
- (C) "I think he said, 'I'm going to the store to get some butter.'
- (D) I think he said 'I'm going to the store to get some butter.'

#### 6. My brother is a talented musician he plays the guitar

- A) My brother is a talented musician; he plays the guitar.
- (B) My brother is a talented musician, he plays the guitar.
- (C) My brother is a talented musician, (he plays the guitar).
- (D) My brother is a talented musician . . . he plays the guitar.

# 7. Kelly and her sister made some caramel filled candies for the school's bake sale

- (A) Kelly and her sister made some caramel-filled candies for the school's bake sale.
- (B) Kelly and her sister made some caramel-filled-candies for the school's bake-sale.
- (C) Kelly and her sister made some caramel filled candies (for the school's bake sale).
- (D) Kelly (and her sister) made some caramel filled candies for the school's bake sale.

# 8. They ordered their usual meal fried chicken for dinner at the restaurant.

- (A) They ordered their usual meal fried-chicken for dinner at the restaurant.
- (B) They ordered (their usual meal) fried-chicken for dinner at the restaurant.
- (C) They ordered their usual meal; fried chicken for dinner (at the restaurant).
- (D) They ordered their usual meal (fried chicken) for dinner at the restaurant.

#### 9. She really enjoyed her job and was eager to resign her contract.

- (A) She really enjoyed her job and was eager to resign (her contract).
- (B) She really enjoyed her job and was eager to re-sign her contract.
- (C) She really enjoyed her job [and was eager to resign her contract].
- (D) She really enjoyed her job; and was eager to re-sign her contract.

# 10. She said she was stuck in stop and go traffic all the way home from work.

- (A) She said 'she was stuck in stop and go traffic all the way home from work.'
- (B) She said she was stuck in stop/ and/ go traffic all the way home from work.
- (C) She said she was stuck in stop-and-go traffic all the way home from work.
- (D) "She said, 'she was stuck in stop go traffic all the way home from work.'"

# Idioms and Expressions

Circle the correct	answers.		
1. At the	_ of the day, he was	still her brother, and	she loved him.
a. late	b. end	c. truth	d. insult
2. Bryan had read t	he book so many time	es, he knew it by	·
a. safe	b. story	c. heart	d. world
3. It was	_ there for a while, bu	ut the sick man starte	d to feel better.
a. tir	me and go	b. touch and ago	
c. it	or not	d. touch and go	
4. Our team has ab	solutely no	of winning the tour	rnament without Paula.
a. chance	b. wonder	c. idea	d. thing
5. Jordan's invitation	on came out of the	I didn't thir	nk I'd be invited.
a. red	b. blue	c. yellow	d. black
Find the mistakes	and rewrite them or	n the line.	
NILI	-112		£ 1 Tu 41
		3	of her eye. Tracy, on the
	•	•	wn thing time and ago. It
		_	ive Nathan a new car. He
	•	, ,	Tracy her grandmother's
·			bad situation. She bought
some purple seat c	covers. They were just	the thinking to make	the old car fun to drive.
1		<b>→</b>	
2		<b>→</b>	
3.		$\rightarrow$	

Cł	noose the id	diom or expression that goes best	in the blank.			
1.	, because he broke his arm, he wasn't able to go swimming					
	all summ	er.				
		(A) To be fair	(B) To say the least			
		(C) To add insult to injury	(D) To put it mildly			
2.	He's been	, working some	very long hours.			
		(A) burning the candle at both end	S			
		(B) end of the day				
		(C) for hours on end				
		D) light at the end of the tunnel				
3.	The coach	was very good at	in all of her players.			
		(A) the best of both worlds				
		(B) making the best of a bad situat	ion			
		(C) bringing out the best				
		(D) better safe than sorry				
4.	My 15-year	-old dog is still	_•			
		(A) believe it or not	(B) now and again			
		C) few and far between	(D) alive and kicking			
5.		, I think about my best fr	end from elementary school,			
	and I miss					
		(A) A thing or two	(B) Now and again			
		(C) First things first	(D) Last but not least			
6.	There is	we will be able	to solve this puzzle without			
	her help.					
		(A) no chance	(B) no such thing			
		(C) no wonder	(D) no reason			
7.	To get from	n LA back to DC in time for work,	he had to take the	flight.		
		(A) pink slip	(B) black out			
		(C) red-eye	(D) blue blood			
8.	I came hor	ne late last night, and my parents	s gave me			
	about whe	ere I was.				
		(A) my two cents	(B) the third degree			
		(C) million-dollar question	(D) the eleventh hour			

9. Everyone criticized him for presenting	idea to the boss.
(A) a couch potato	(B) the apple of someone's eye
(C) a half-baked	(D) piece of cake
10. By donating your old clothes to charit	ty, you can: make
room in your closet and do	
something nice for others.	
(A) paint the town red	(B) compare apples to oranges
(C) bring home the bacon	(D) kill two birds with one stone
*************	*****************

#### **ENGLISH M.6**

#### I. <u>Directions</u>: <u>Choose the correct answer.</u>

1. Pour the cup of coffee for yourself.

We may say:

- 1. You yourself pour a cup of coffee.
- 2. You pour yourself a cup of coffee.
- 2. For us to learn Russian is very difficult.

We may say:

- 1. It is very difficult for us to learn Russian.
- 2. Learn Russian is very difficult for us.
- 3. People said that the fall of Rome was due to malaria.

We may say:

- 1. It was said for the fall of Rome being due to malaria.
- 2. The fall of Rome was said to be due to malaria.
- 4. I am tired out running.

We may say:

- 1. I am tiring out.
- 2. To run makes me tired out.
- 5. That it will rain today is probable.

We may say:

- 1. It will rain today is probable.
- 2. It is probable that it will rain today.
- 6. It takes me a long time to learn how to cook.

We may say:

- 1. To take a long time to learn how to cook.
- 2. To learn how to cook takes a long time for me.
- 7. He walks to school on his own.

We may say:

- 1. He walks to school alone.
- 2. He walks to school himself.
- 8. The girl who has red hair is sensitive.

We may say:

- 1. The girl with has red hair is sensitive.
- 2. The red-haired girl is sensitive.

9. She didn't make a sound.

We may say:

- 1. Not a sound she makes.
- 2. Not a sound did she make.
- 10. I not only scolded him but also chased him.

We may say:

- 1. Not only did I scold him but also chased him.
- 2. Not only did I scold him but also did chase him.
- 11. The teacher comes there.

We may say:

- 1. There the teacher comes.
- 2. There comes the teacher.
- 12. Mary bought herself a book.

We may say:

- 1. Mary bought a book herself.
- 2. Mary bought a book for herself.
- 13. It's no use telephoning him.

We may say:

- 1. It's no worth to telephone him.
- 2. It's useless to telephone him.
- 14. Do you own the notebook?

We may say:

- 1. Does the notebook belong to your?
- 2. Is the notebook yours?
- 15. They spent almost two hours doing the task.

We may say:

- 1. To do the task for them to take almost two hours.
- 2. It took them almost two hours to do the task.
- 16. Jane is the most diligent girl.

We may say:

- 1. Jane is more diligent than any other girl.
- 2. No one isn't so diligent as Jane.

17. One of Somchai's favourite subjects is math.

### We may say:

- 1. Math is a favourite subject of Somchai.
- 2. Math is a favourite subject of Somchai's.
- 18. After she had graduated from T.U., she continued her study abroad. We may say :
  - 1. Having graduated from T.U., she continued her study abroad.
  - 2. Graduated from T.U., she continued her study abroad.
- 19. The lastest solar eclipse is interesting to a number of people.

## We may say:

- 1. A number of people are interested in the lastest solar eclipse.
- 2. The lastest solar eclipse makes a number of people interesting.
- 20. I haven't any time to do it and I haven't any money.

### We may say:

- 1. I haven't any time to do it nor do I have any money.
- 2. I haven't any time to do it nor haven't any money.
- 21. "She didn't care whether I lived well or not" means:
  - 1. She took care that I lived well.
  - 2. She worried about how I lived.
  - 3. She didn't worry about how I lived.
- 22. "Malai sees herself in a mirror" means:
  - 1. Malai sees not only herself but also a mirror.
  - 2. Malai sees Malai in a mirror.
  - 3. No one else sees Malai in a mirror.
- 23. "She is acquainted (คุ้นเคย) with John herself" means :
  - 1. No one is acquainted with John. She is acquainted with John.
  - 2. Not only she but someone else is acquainted with John.
  - 3. She as well as someone else is acquainted with John.
- 24. "He opened a can of milk himself" means:
  - 1. He opened a can of milk. No one opened it for him.
  - 2. He opened a can of milk alone.
  - 3. He opened a can of milk by himself.

- 25. "We have little time for amusement" means :
  - 1. We don't like amusement.
  - 2. We are very busy.
  - 3. We like amusement only a little.
- 26. "However hard you try, you will never beat him" means :
  - 1. Because you try your best, you will surely beat him.
  - 2. If you try your best, you may finally beat him.
  - 3. Though you try your best, you won't ever beat him.
- 27. "I can't believe how polluted the air is!" means :
  - 1. I don't know how the air is polluted.
  - 2. I can't believe that polluted air exists here.
  - 3. I'm very surprised that the air is so polluted.
- 28. "John was 15 minutes late. Mary had left when he arrived" means :
  - 1. Mary was not there when John arrived.
  - 2. Mary was still waiting for John when he arrived.
  - 3. John was late but Mary did not arrive at all.
- 29. "Despite the great difference in size, shape, and function, all cells have the same 46 chromosomes" means :
  - 1. Difference in size, shape, and function are not very great because all cells have the same 46 chromosomes.
  - 2. Although the 46 chromosomes are the same in all cells, there are differences in cell size, shape, and function.
- 30. "Taking notes, even incomplete ones, is usually more efficient than relying on one's memory" means :
  - 1. Because notes are usually incomplete, it is more efficient to rely on one's memory.
  - 2. It is usually more efficient to take incomplete notes than to rely on one's memory.

II. <u>[</u>	II. <u>Directions</u> : Fill in the blanks with the most appropriate idioms.						
	make out	come by	look down on	took down			
	put up with	go with	turned out	called up			
	take to	call on	take out	get round			
	went over	get over	clear up	went away			
	come round	drop in	come along with	by myself			
31.	He me .	veı	y late last night.				
32.	Don't	the poor.					
33.	I want to be						
34.	Do you think he will		if I give him son	ne whisky.			
35.	I will	you as fa	r as the post office.				
36.	The police tried to		the crime.				
37.	He	the house	thoroughly before buyin	ng it.			
38.	Why do people		. such silly things?				
39.	39. Boys girls like fish to water.						
40.	I can't	the mea	aning of the poem.				
41.	You should buy that bl	ouse. It will	well	your red suit.			
42.	I hope that money was	honestly					
43.	43. Let'sJohn at John's house.						
44.	44. Sompong was really upset when he failed the test. He thought he would never						
	feeling	so stupid.					
45.	Some rich people	f	or a long holiday abroad	d.			
46.	46. She knows how toher father.						
47.	17. This school has some first-rate scholars.						
48.	48. The students what this teacher lectured.						
49.	your han	ds	of your pocket.				
50.	I thought I'd		on you while I was pa	assing.			
***	*******	******	********	******			

# <u>Directions</u>: Fill in each blank space with one preposition. like for of in at ลร from during with by on to 1. Most people like to go to Bangsaen ...... the summer holidays. 2. He was proud ...... his ability. 3. Justin is weak ..... the English grammar. 4. You are treating me ...... a fool. 5. He works ...... 8.00 a.m. till 4.00 p.m. 6. I will go to school ..... foot tomorrow. 7. Sue is good ...... golf. 8. That man is famous ...... his latest article in the paper. 9. Narong was chosen .....leader. 10. I did my best to get in touch ...... him. 11. According ...... the newspaper, it's going to rain this evening. 12. We'll go to the seaside ..... train. <u>Directions</u>: Fill in each blank space with one word. about another if other at as with should both unless nearly too 1. You ...... have come earlier. 2. Would you be so kind ...... to tell him that I'm here. 3. I have \$ 20, but that isn't ...... enough for my fare. 4. ..... John and Mary like dancing. 5. They are ..... to start journey this evening. 6. I don't know ...... Bill would study physics the next day. 7. He drank ..... much milk last night. 8. ..... bad weather stops me, I go for a picnic every Sunday. 9. Come to see me some ...... day. 10. They were traveling ...... 80 miles per hour. 11. He is a middle-aged man ...... a long face.

12. One man's meat is ...... man's poison.

<u>Dir</u>	ections: Rewrite these sentences by using the word or words given.
1.	For him to live on small pension is hard. (It is)
2.	To study English here takes a long time. (It takes)
3.	No sooner had I got to school than the bell rang. (as soon as)
4.	It is necessary to attend classes. ( Use "Gerund Phrase" as Subject )
5.	It is time for her to go to bed. (It's time + Clause)
6.	In spite of his hard work, he didn't succeed. (but)
7.	She left early in order to catch her train. (so that)
8.	Although I don't like him, I can't help admiring him. (however)
9	It started to rain two hours ago and it is still raining.
΄.	( Use "Present perfect continuous")
10.	Though he drove fast, he didn't get home in time. (as)
1	1. Dara likes to cook. <b>(fond of)</b>
1	2. However hard I tried, I couldn't beat him. ( no matter )

# $\underline{\text{DIRECTIONS}}$ : Select the error in one of the underlined parts in each sentence.

My book is having	three to	rn pages,	which <u>I trie</u>	ed to tape	<u>e</u> before l	<u>left</u> hon	ne.
1.			2.	3.		4.	
Tom is the man w	<u>/hom,   tł</u>	<u>nink</u> , score	ed the <u>winr</u>	ning point	ts <u>for</u> the	basketba	all team.
	1.	2.	3	<b>.</b>	4.		
Michael tried to g	<u>et</u> a large	group <u>to</u>	<u>clean</u> up t	the park b	out he <u>ha</u>	s found	<u>only</u>
1.			2.			3.	4.
one person willin	g to help	).					
Nowadays people	often us	se the wo	rd "drug" t	o refer <u>to</u>	o pills or 1	mixtures	taking
	1.			2	2.		3.
to relieve pain o	r to make	e people :	sleep.				
			4.				
Consider all the p	ossibilitie	es, I <u>really</u>	<u>believe</u> th	at I <u>woul</u>	<u>d prefer</u> r	not <u>to ma</u>	<u>ake</u>
1.			2.		3.	4.	
y changes now.							
If you <u>would have</u>	gone to	last night	<u>''s</u> game, I	am sure t	that you	<u>would h</u>	ave enjoyed
1.		2.					3.
eing <u>our team win</u> .							
4.							
In its <u>early history</u>	, the Unit	ted States	<u>has had v</u>	<u>ery few</u> t	axes.		
1.		2.	3.	4.			
The typewriter, w	hich it is	one of th	e world's g	reat <u>inve</u>	<u>ntions,</u> ha	as not ye	et been
1.	2.				3.		
replaced by the	word pro	cessor.					
4.							
	1. Tom is the man well in the man well in the man well in the man well in the person willin.  Nowadays people to relieve pain of the manages of the person willin.  Consider all the person in the person willin.  If you would have the manage in the person willin.  If you would have the manage in the person willing our team win.  4.  In its early history the typewriter, well in the typewriter, well in the person willing in the person willing in the manage in the	1. Tom is the man whom, I the street to get a large of the street to get a large of the street to relieve pain or to make the street of the st	Tom is the man whom, I think, score  1. 2.  Michael tried to get a large group to  1. one person willing to help.  Nowadays people often use the wor  1. to relieve pain or to make people of the possibilities, I really  1. y changes now.  If you would have gone to last night  1. 2.  eing our team win.  4.  In its early history, the United States  1. 2.  The typewriter, which it is one of the content of the co	1. 2. 3  Michael tried to get a large group to clean up to the serior of the use the word "drug" to the person willing to help.  Nowadays people often use the word "drug" to the to relieve pain or to make people sleep.  4. Consider all the possibilities, I really believe the total to the people sleep.  1. 2. y changes now.  If you would have gone to last night's game, I are to the total to the people sleep.  1. 2. to relieve pain or to make people sleep.  4. Consider all the possibilities, I really believe the total to the people sleep.  1. 2. to replaced by the word processor.	1. 2. 3.  Tom is the man whom, I think, scored the winning point 1. 2. 3.  Michael tried to get a large group to clean up the park in 1. 2.  one person willing to help.  Nowadays people often use the word "drug" to refer to 1. 2.  to relieve pain or to make people sleep.  4.  Consider all the possibilities, I really believe that I would 1. 2.  y changes now.  If you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure to 1. 2.  eing our team win.  4.  In its early history, the United States has had very few to 1. 2. 3. 4.  The typewriter, which it is one of the world's great inverse 1. 2.  replaced by the word processor.	1. 2. 3.  Tom is the man whom, I think, scored the winning points for the 1. 2. 3. 4.  Michael tried to get a large group to clean up the park but he has 1. 2.  one person willing to help.  Nowadays people often use the word "drug" to refer to pills or 1. 2.  to relieve pain or to make people sleep.  4.  Consider all the possibilities, I really believe that I would prefer row 1. 2. 3.  y changes now.  If you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you 1. 2.  eing our team win.  4.  In its early history, the United States has had very few taxes.  1. 2. 3.  The typewriter, which it is one of the world's great inventions, has 1. 2. 3.  replaced by the word processor.	Tom is the man whom, I think, scored the winning points for the basket by 1. 2. 3. 4.  Michael tried to get a large group to clean up the park but he has found 1. 2. 3.  one person willing to help.  Nowadays people often use the word "drug" to refer to pills or mixtures 1. 2.  to relieve pain or to make people sleep.  4.  Consider all the possibilities, I really believe that I would prefer not to make you changes now.  If you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that you would have gone to last night's game, I am sure that I would prefer not to make people gleep.  1. 2. 3. 4.

9. <u>Had received</u> his fourth speeding ticket <u>in</u> a <u>two-month span</u> , his driver's license					
1.			2.	3.	
was revoked.					
4.					
10. He is one of	those mer	whom, I	am sure, alway	s do <u>their</u> bes	t, <u>even in</u> the most
		1.		2.	3.
trying circumst	ances.				
4.					
11. Never before	has so ma	<u>any</u> peopl	e <u>in</u> the United	States been <u>i</u>	interested in soccer.
	1. 2.		3.		4.
12. Rescue <u>work</u>	<u>ers</u> searche	ed the <u>mo</u>	<u>st remote</u> area	s of the park <u>t</u>	trying to locate the
1.			2.		3.
<u>missed</u> mar	١.				
4.					
13. Even though	many pec	ple had a	lready <u>did</u> it, sh	ne <u>did not war</u>	<u>nt</u> to.
1.		2.	3.	4.	
14. <u>Communicati</u>	ion betwe	en these t	wo countries <u>h</u>	ave increased	since the negotiation
1.				2.	
<u>of</u> a <u>monun</u>	<u>nental trac</u>	<u>de agreem</u>	<u>ent</u> .		
3.	4.				
15. A barometer	is <u>a</u> device	e <u>it is</u> usec	l <u>to measure</u> at	mospheric <u>pre</u>	<u>essure</u> .
	1.	2.	3.		4.
*******	*****	********	<del>{**************</del>	<del>************</del>	********